

---

## REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY

### ***Preface***

Government of British Columbia 2002b. *Reviewable Projects Regulation*. BC Reg. 370/2002

Government of British Columbia. 2002a. *British Columbia Environmental Assessment Act SBC 2002, c43*

Government of Canada 2012a *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act*. S.C. 2012, c. 19, s. 52

Government of Canada 2012b. *Regulations Designating Physical Activities*. SOR/2012-147.

### ***Section 1 - Purpose of the Application***

Government of British Columbia 2002b. *Reviewable Projects Regulation*. BC Reg. 370/2002

Government of British Columbia. 2002a. *British Columbia Environmental Assessment Act SBC 2002, c43*

Government of Canada 2012a *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act*. S.C. 2012, c. 19, s. 52

Government of Canada 2012b. *Regulations Designating Physical Activities*. SOR/2012-147.

### ***Section 2 - Project Overview***

Adams, J. and S. Halchuk. 2003. Fourth generation seismic hazard maps of Canada: Values for over 650 Canadian localities intended for the 2005 National Building Code of Canada. Geological Survey of Canada, Open File 4459.

Agency (Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency). 2012a. Letter on receipt of the Project Description for the Proposed Blackwater Gold Project (the Project) New Gold Inc, 2 November 2012.

Agency. 2012a. Letter on receipt of the Project Description for the Proposed Blackwater Gold Project (the Project) New Gold Inc, 2 November 2012.

Agency. 2012b. Notice of Environmental Assessment Determination, 21 December 2012, Available at <http://www.ceaa-acee.gc.ca/050/document-eng.cfm?document=84189>. Accessed 2013.

Agency. 2013. Environmental Impact Statement Guidelines. Guidelines for the Preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement for an Environmental Assessment pursuant to the

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



*Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012.* Prepared for New Gold Inc. for the Blackwater Gold Project. February 2013.

Alberta Soils Advisory Committee. 1987. Soil quality criteria relative to disturbance and reclamation. Prepared by Soil Quality Working Group. Alberta Agriculture. Edmonton, AB.

Alberta Whitebark and Limber Pine Recovery Team. 2014. Alberta Whitebark Pine Recovery Plan 2013-2018. Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, Alberta Species at Risk Recovery Plan No. 34. Edmonton, AB. 63 pp.

Alkhaddar, R.M., D.A. Phipps and C. Cheng. 2005. Today and Tomorrow! Research Prospects for Aerobic Biological Liquid Waste Treatment for Reduction of Carbon Load. E-Water, Official Publication of the European Water Association (EWA). 18 pp.

Allnorth. 2013. Blackwater Feasibility Study Cost Report.

AMEC Environment & Infrastructure (AMEC). 2012. Project Description. Prepared for New Gold Inc. for the Blackwater Gold Project. 24 October 2012.

AMEC. 2012. Blackwater Gold Project Description. October 2012.

AMEC. 2012. New Gold Inc. Blackwater Project, British Columbia, Preliminary Economic Assessment Report.

BC EAO. 2012. Order under Section 10 – Blackwater Gold Project, 5 November 2012.

BC EAO and Agency (British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office and Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency). 2004. Canada-British Columbia Agreement for Environmental Assessment Cooperation. Available at <http://www.ceaa-acee.gc.ca/default.asp?lang=En&n=04A20DBC-1>. Accessed 2012.

BC EAO. 2012. Order under Section 10 – Blackwater Gold Project, 5 November 2012.

BC EAO. 2013a. Order under Section 11 – Blackwater Gold Project, 9 July 2013.

BC EAO. 2014. Order under Section 13 – Blackwater Gold Project, 13 March 2014.

BC EAO. 2014a. Application Information Requirements (AIR) – Blackwater Gold Project.

BC Hydro. 2003. Approved Work Practices for Managing Riparian Vegetation.

BC Hydro. 2010. Integrated Vegetation Management Plan For Transmission Rights-of-way.

BC Integrated Land Management Bureau. 2007. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. Vanderhoof LRMP update project. Available at

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/tasb/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/news/files/newsletters/Vanderhoof\\_Newsletter\\_Dec2007.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/tasb/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/news/files/newsletters/Vanderhoof_Newsletter_Dec2007.pdf). Access February 2015.
- BC MEM. 2008. Health, Safety and Reclamation Code for Mines in British Columbia. Ministry of Energy and Mines and Responsible for Core Review.
- BC Mine Waste Rock Pile Research Committee (BC MWRPRC). 1991. Mine Rock and Overburden Piles: Investigation and Design Manual – Interim Guidelines, May 1991.
- BC Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources (BC MEMPR). 2009. Handbook for Mineral and Coal Exploration in British Columbia 2008-2009. A working field guide. Available at <http://www.llbc.leg.bc.ca/public/PubDocs/bcdocs/442136/MXHandbook2008-09.pdf>. Accessed 2013.
- BC Ministry of Environment, Lands & Parks. 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. Victoria, BC: Ministry of Employment & Investment, Ministry of Environment, Lands & Parks, Ministry of Forests. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed 15 July 2013.
- BC Ministry of Environment. 2008. Riparian Planting Guidelines and Recommended Species. 2 pp.
- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. 2013. Invasive Alien Plant Program. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/HRA/Plants/index.htm>.
- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. 2012. 2012–2014 Hunting and Trapping Regulations Synopsis. Updated March 2013. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/>. Accessed April 2013.
- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. 2013. Prince George Timber Supply Area—Mid-Term Timber Supply. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain\\_pine\\_beetle/mid-term-timber-supply-project/](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain_pine_beetle/mid-term-timber-supply-project/). Accessed April 2013.
- BC Stats. 2014. The British Columbia Input-Output Model. Available at <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/StatisticsBySubject/Economy/BCInputOutputModel.aspx>.
- BC Stats. 2012. Statistics by Subject, Social Statistics, Socio-Economic Profiles & Indices, Profile Reports. Available at <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/StatisticsBySubject/SocialStatistics/SocioEconomicProfilesIndices/Profiles.aspx>. Accessed February 2013.
- BC Stats. 2013. Labour Force Statistics. August 2013. Retrieved from <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/StatisticsBySubject/LabourIncome/EmploymentUnemployment.aspx>; Accessed October 2013.

- Borken-Kleefeld, J., J. Fuglestvedt and T. Bernsten. 2013. Mode, Load, and Specific Climate Impact from Passenger Trips. *Environmental Science and Technology*. Vol. 47 Issue 14, pp 7608–7614.
- British Columbia Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2013. BC Species and Ecosystems Explorer. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/> (accessed 2012).
- British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Application Information Requirements Template With Respect to an Application for an Environmental Assessment Certificate pursuant to the Environmental Assessment Act, S.B.C. 2002, c.43. May 2013.
- British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Order under section 11 – Blackwater Gold Project, 9 July 2013.
- British Columbia Ministry of Energy and Mines (BC MEM). 1998. Policy for Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage at Mine Sites in British Columbia.
- British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks (BC MOELP). 1996. Guidelines for Assessing the Design, Size and Operation of Sedimentation Ponds Used in Mining.
- Brown R.L. and M.A. Naeth. 2014. Woody Debris Amendment Enhances Reclamation after Oil Sands Mining in Alberta, Canada. *Restoration Ecology* 22: 40-48.
- Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment (CCME). 2012. Canadian Environmental Quality Guidelines. Available at <http://ceqg-rcqe.ccme.ca/>.
- Canadian Dam Association (CDA). 2007. Dam Safety Guidelines. Available at [www.cda.ca](http://www.cda.ca). Accessed January 2014.
- Canadian Dam Association (CDA). 2007. Dam Safety Guidelines. Available at [www.cda.ca](http://www.cda.ca).
- Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency (Agency). 2013. Environmental Impact Statement Guidelines. Guidelines for the Preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement for an Environmental Assessment pursuant to the *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. Prepared for New Gold Inc. for the Blackwater Gold Project. February 2013.
- Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency (Agency). 2013. Operational Policy Statement Addressing “Purpose of” and “Alternative Means” under the Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012.
- Canadian Geotechnical Society. 2006. Canadian Foundation Engineering Manual, 4<sup>th</sup> Edition.
- CDA. 2013. Draft Bulletin on Dam Safety. Available at [www.cda.ca](http://www.cda.ca). Accessed January 2014.

- Cohen-Fernández, A.C. and M.A. Naeth. 2013a. Anthroposol development from limestone quarry substrates, *Canadian Journal of Soil Science*, accepted, 2013.
- Cohen-Fernández, A.C. and M.A. Naeth. 2013b. Erosion control blankets, organic amendments and site variability influenced the initial plant community at a limestone quarry in the Canadian Rocky Mountains. *Biogeosciences* 10: 5243-5253.
- COSEWIC (Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada). 2003. COSEWIC assessment and update status report on the white sturgeon *Acipenser transmontanus* in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada. Ottawa. vii + 51 pp. ([www.sararegistry.gc.ca/status/status\\_e.cfm](http://www.sararegistry.gc.ca/status/status_e.cfm)).
- Diakow, L.J. and V.M. Levson. 1997. Bedrock and Surficial Geology of the Southern Nechako Plateau, Central British Columbia (93F/2, 3, 6, 7). *Geoscience Maps* 1997- 2 (map).
- Diakow, L.J., I.C.L. Webster, T.A. Richards, and H.W. Tipper. 1997. Geology of the Fawnie and Nechako Ranges, Southern Nechako Plateau, Central British Columbia (96F/2,3,6,7). Paper 1997-2; in *Interior Plateau Geoscience Project: Summary of Geological, Geochemical and Geophysical Studies*.
- Diakow, L.J., I.C.L. Webster, V.M. Levson, and T.R. Giles. 1994. Bedrock and Surficial Geology of the Fawnie Creek Map Area (93F/3). Open File 1994-2, BCMEMPR (Geological Survey of Canada).
- Donato, D.B., O. Nichols, H. Possingham, M. Moore, P.F. Ricci and B.N. Noller. 2007. A Critical Review of the Effects of Gold Cyanide-bearing Tailings Solutions on Wildlife. *Environment International*. Vol. 33, Issue 7, October 2007. Pages 974-984.
- Environment Canada. 2006. Canada Wide Standard for Dioxins/Furans.
- Environment Canada. 2009. Environmental Code of Practice for Metal Mines.
- Environment Canada. 2011. Guidelines for the Assessment of Alternatives for Mine Waste Disposal. Government of Canada: Ottawa, ON.
- Environment Canada. 2011. Location of the mine waste storage facilities was selected primarily based on discussions with local Aboriginal groups and the proponent's environmental analysis as per the Guidelines for the Assessment of Alternatives for Mine Waste Disposal.
- Environment Canada. 2012. Streamlining the Approvals Process for Metal Mines with Tailings Impoundment Areas. Available at <https://www.ec.gc.ca/pollution/default.asp?lang=En&n=EFAD32D1-1>. Accessed 4 February 2014.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Environment Canada. 2013a. Network of Protected Areas. Available at [http://www.ec.gc.ca/ap-pa/default.asp?lang=En&n=989C474A-1#\\_001](http://www.ec.gc.ca/ap-pa/default.asp?lang=En&n=989C474A-1#_001). Accessed March 2013.
- Environment Canada. 2013b. Migratory Bird Sanctuaries. Retrieved from <http://www.ec.gc.ca/ap-pa/default.asp?lang=En&n=EB3D54D1-1>. Accessed April 2013.
- ERM Rescan. 2014. Blackwater Gold Project: Assessment of Alternatives for the Blackwater Gold Project Tailings Storage Facility. Prepared for New Gold Inc. by ERM Consultants Canada Ltd., Vancouver, British Columbia
- Friedman, R.M, L.J. Diakow, R.A. Lane, and J.K. Mortensen. 2001. "New U–Pb age constraints on latest Cretaceous magmatism and associated mineralization in the Fawnie Range, Nechako Plateau, central British Columbia," *Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences* 38, 619–637.
- Gardner, W., K. Broersma, A. Naeth, and A. Jobson. 2003. Influence of biosolids and fertilizer amendments on selected soil: physical, chemical and microbial parameters in tailings revegetation. BC Mine Reclamation Symposium.
- Gomez-Aparicio, L. 2009. The role of plant interactions in the restoration of degraded ecosystems: A meta-analysis across life-forms and ecosystems. *Journal of Ecology*. 97: 1202–1214.
- Government of BC. 1996a. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 293.
- Government of BC. 1996b. *Weed Control Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 487.
- Government of BC. 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. Available at [http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/vanderhoof\\_lrmp/index.html](http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/vanderhoof_lrmp/index.html). Accessed December 2012
- Government of BC. 2002. *Concurrent Approval Regulation*. BC Reg 371/2002.
- Government of BC. 2002a. (British Columbia) *Environmental Assessment Act*. SBC 2002, c. 43.
- Government of BC. 2002b. *Reviewable Projects Regulation*. BC Reg 370/2002.
- Government of BC. 2003. *Environmental Management Act*. SBC 2003, c. 53.
- Government of BC. 2011. *Weed Control Regulation*. BC Reg. 66/85 of the *Weed Control Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 487.
- Government of BC. 2012. Beyond the Beetle: A Mid-Term Timber Supply Action Plan. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain\\_pine\\_beetle/mid-term-timber-supply-project/MTTS-Action-Plan-201210.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain_pine_beetle/mid-term-timber-supply-project/MTTS-Action-Plan-201210.pdf). Accessed May 2013.



## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Government of BC. 2013. Proponent Guide to Coordinated Authorizations for Major Mine Projects. November 15, 2013. Version 1. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/ftp/major\\_projects/external/!publish/web/mining/Proponent\\_Guide\\_Major\\_Mine\\_Projects.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/ftp/major_projects/external/!publish/web/mining/Proponent_Guide_Major_Mine_Projects.pdf). Accessed 7 February 2014.
- Government of British Columbia. 1996a. *Mines Act*. RSBC, 1996. c. 293.
- Government of British Columbia. 1996b. *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 458.
- Government of British Columbia. 2009. *Hazardous Waste Regulation*, BC Reg 63/88.
- Government of British Columbia. 2012. *Municipal Wastewater Regulation*, BC Reg 87/2012.
- Government of Canada. 1985. *Navigation Protection Act*. RSC 1985, c. N-22.
- Government of Canada. 1985. *Seeds Act*. RSC 1985, s. S-8.
- Government of Canada. 1992. *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act, 1992*. SC 1992, c. 34.
- Government of Canada. 1999. *Canadian Environmental Protection Act, 1999*. SC 1999, c. 33.
- Government of Canada. 2001. *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Regulations*. SOR/2001-286.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29.
- Government of Canada. 2012. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. SC 2012, c. 52.
- Government of Canada. 2012. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act*. S.C. 2012, c. 19, s. 52
- Government of Canada. 2012. Regulations Designating Physical Activities. SOR/2002-147.
- Hilson, G. and A.J. Monhemius. 2006. Alternatives to Cyanide in Gold Mining Industry; What Prospects for the Future. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 14: 1158-1167.
- Himmer, S. and D.S. Power. 1999. Wildlife Species Habitat Models and Final Wildlife Suitability Ratings for the Itcha/Ilgachuz Area. Prepared for: Wildlife Branch, BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Williams Lake, BC.
- Horne, G. 2009. British Columbia Local Area Dependencies: 2006. Retrieved from <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/StatisticsBySubject/Economy/BCInputOutputModel.asp>; accessed 2012.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 2008. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan (LRMP). Background Documentation and Reference Information for the Access Management Plan for Forest Recreation: 2008.
- Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>.
- International Commission on Large Dams (ICOLD). 1995. Dam Failures, Statistical Analysis. ICOLD Bulletin 99.
- International Cyanide Management Institute. 2012. International Cyanide Management Code (ICMC). Available at <http://www.cyanidecode.org/sites/default/files/pdf/thecode.pdf>. Accessed 2014.
- International Network for Acid Prevention (INAP). 2009. Global Acid Rock Drainage (GARD) Guide. Available at [www.gardguide.com](http://www.gardguide.com). Accessed January 2014.
- Johnson, C.K., Parker, K.L., Heard, D.C., and D.R. Seip. 2004. Movements, Foraging Habits, and Habitat use Strategies of Northern Woodland Caribou during Winter: Implications for Forest Practices in British Columbia. *BC Journal of Ecosystems and Management* 5(1):22-35.
- Kilborn Inc. and the Environmental Applications Group Ltd. 1992. Metal Mining Sector, Best Available Pollution Control Technology, Second Edition. Prepared for the Ontario Ministry of the Environment.
- Knight Piésold Consulting. 2012. Blackwater Gold – Fresh Water Supply Options Trade-off Study. Prepared for New Gold Inc.
- Knight Piésold Consulting. 2013. New Gold Inc. Blackwater Project – Transmission Line Feasibility Study. Prepared for New Gold Inc.
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2011a. Blackwater Gold Project – Tailings Storage Facility Site Alternative Assessment (VA10-00235, January 2011).
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2011b. Blackwater Gold Project – Tailings Disposal Options – Conceptual Planning and Cost Estimates (VA11-01276, September 2011).
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2012. Blackwater Gold Project Updated Mine Development Concept Evaluation Considering Potentially Acid Generating (PAG) Disposal On-land and Subaqueously in the Tailings Facility (VA11-01960, April 2012).
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2013a. Blackwater Gold Project – 2013 Hydrometeorology Report. Rev 0. Reference Number: VA101-457/6-12.



## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2013b. Blackwater Gold Project – Watershed Modelling Report. Rev 1. Reference Number: VA101-457/6-6.
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2013c. Blackwater Gold Project – Mine Waste and Water Management. Rev 1. Reference Number: VA101-457/6-11.
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2013d. Blackwater Gold Project. Preliminary Engineering Hydrometeorology Report. Prepared for: New Gold Inc. 23 pp.
- Land Resources Network Ltd. 1993. Organic materials as soil amendments in reclamation: A review of the literature. Alberta Conservation and Reclamation Council Report. No. RRTAC 93-4. ISBN 0-7732-0887-9. 228 pp.
- Landis, T.D. 1995. The Container Tree Nursery Manual. Volume 1. Nursery planning, development, and management. Agric. Handbook. 674. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture Forest Service. Pp 54-56. Available at <http://www.rngr.net/publications/ctnm/volume-1>. Accessed January 2014.
- Lary, D.J. 2004. Atmospheric pseudohalogen chemistry. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics Discussions 4(5): 5381-5405.
- Levson, V.M., G.F. Weary, and T.R. Giles. 1995. Surficial Geology and Drift Exploration Studies in the Tsacha Lake and Chedakuz Creek Areas. BCGS Geological Fieldwork.
- LM Forest Resource Solutions Ltd. 2011. The Vanderhoof Ecosystem Restoration Strategic Plan - Prepared for the Vanderhoof Ecosystem Restoration Steering Committee. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/dva/Other%20Documents/Vanderhoof%20ER%20Strategic%20Plan.pdf>
- Lysay, G., J. McConnachie, C. Johns, and J. Evans. 2010. Kemess South Mine Reclamation and Closure. Report prepared for Northgate Minerals.
- MacKenzie, W.H. and J.R. Moran. 2004. Wetlands of British Columbia. A Guide to Identification. Land Management Handbook No. 52. Resources Branch, BC Ministry of Forests, Victoria, BC.
- Major Projects Management Office, MPMO. 2014. Project Agreement for the Blackwater Gold Mine in British Columbia (6 May 2013). Available at <http://mpmo.gc.ca/projects/161>. Accessed March 4, 2014.
- Marsden, J.O. and C. Iain House. 2006. Chemistry of Gold Extraction. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. Society for Mining, Metallurgy, and Exploration Inc.
- Mate, D.J. and V.M. Levson. 2000. "Quaternary stratigraphy and history of the Ootsa Lake-Cheslatte River area, Nechako Plateau, central British Columbia." Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences.

- Mine Environment Neutral Drainage (MEND). 2009. Prediction Manual for Drainage Chemistry from Sulphidic Geologic Materials. MEND Report 1.20.1.
- Mortensen, J.K. 2011. U-Pb zircon dating of volcanic and intrusive rock samples from the vicinity of the Blackwater-Davidson deposit by laser ablation ICP-MS, Internal report to Richfield Ventures Inc., 10 p.
- New Gold Inc. 2012. Project Description - Blackwater Gold Project. Prepared by AMEC dated 24 October 2012.
- New Gold Inc. 2014. Blackwater Gold Project NI 43-101 Technical Report on Feasibility Study. 14 January 2014. Available on SEDAR.
- OPET. 2002. The World's Largest Biofuel Plant, Alholmens Kraft, Pietarsaari, OPET – Organization for the Promotion of Energy Technologies. [www.tekes.fi/opet/](http://www.tekes.fi/opet/).
- Parks Canada. 2013. National Marine Conservation Area List. Available at [http://www.pc.gc.ca/progs/amnc-nmca/recherche-search\\_e.asp?m=1](http://www.pc.gc.ca/progs/amnc-nmca/recherche-search_e.asp?m=1). Accessed March 2013. f. Accessed April 2013.
- Parks Canada. n.d. National Historic Sites of Canada System Plan. Available at <http://www.pc.gc.ca/progs/lhn-nhs/index.aspx>. Accessed April 2013.
- Parks Canada. n.d. National Parks System Plan, 3rd Edition. Available at <http://www.pc.gc.ca/progs/pn-np/index.aspx>. Accessed April 2013.
- Peters, T.H. 1984. Case 7.8 Rehabilitation of mine tailings: A case of complete ecosystem reconstruction and revegetation of industrially stressed lands in the Sudbury area, Ontario, Canada. In: Effects of Pollutants at the Ecosystem Level. Edited by P.J. Sheehan, D.R. Miller, G.C. Butler, and P.H. Bourdeau. John Wiley and Sons Ltd. pp. 403-421.
- Price, W.A. 1997. Draft Manual of Guidelines and Recommended Methods for the Prediction of Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage at Mine Sites in British Columbia (Prediction Manual). BC Ministry of Energy and Mines.
- Price, W.A. and J.C. Errington. 1998. Guidelines for Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage at Minesites in British Columbia. BC Ministry of Energy and Mines. Available at [http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/Mining/Permitting-Reclamation/ML-ARD/Pages/Guidelines.aspx#purpose of guidelines](http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/Mining/Permitting-Reclamation/ML-ARD/Pages/Guidelines.aspx#purpose%20of%20guidelines). Accessed 2013.
- Price, W.A. and M. Aziz. 2012. The flooded tailings impoundment at the Equity Silver mine. British Columbia Mine Reclamation Symposium 2012. Available at <http://hdl.handle.net/2429/43468>. Accessed July 2013.

- Ptolemy, J. and R. Vennesland. 2003. Update COSEWIC status report on the white sturgeon *Acipenser transmontanus* in Canada, in COSEWIC assessment and update status report on the white sturgeon, *Acipenser transmontanus*, in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). Ottawa. 1-51 pp.
- Rees, K.L., and J.S.J. van Deventer. 2000. Preg-robbing phenomena in the cyanidation of sulphide gold ores. *Hydrometallurgy* 58(1): 61-80.
- Riddell, J. 2011. "Lithostratigraphic and tectonic framework of Jurassic and Cretaceous Intermontane sedimentary basins of south-central British Columbia." *Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences*, 48, 870–896.
- SGS Minerals Services. 2009. Cyanide Recovery T3 SGS 019.
- Sillitoe, R.H. and J.W. Hedenquist. 2003. "Linkages between volcanotectonic settings, ore-fluid compositions, and epithermal precious metal deposits." *Society of Economic Geologists Special Publication* 10, 315–343.
- Statistics Canada. 2007. 2006 Census of Canada. Retrieved from <http://www12.statcan.ca/census-recensement/2006/dp-pd/prof/92-591/index.cfm?Lang=E>; Accessed May 2012.
- Statistics Canada. 2013. 2011 National Household Survey Profile. *Statistics Canada Catalogue* no. 99-004-XWE. Ottawa. Retrieved from <http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2011/dp-pd/prof/index.cfm?Lang=E>; Accessed July 2013.
- Terry, E.L. and M.D. Wood. 1999. Seasonal Movements and Habitat Selection by Woodland Caribou in the Wolverine Herd, North-central British Columbia Phase 2: 1994-1997. Peace/Williston Fish and Wildlife Compensation Program, Prince George, BC. Report No. 204.
- Thought Solutions Inc. 2005. Nechako Watershed Council Report: Assessment of potential Flow Regimes for the Nechako Watershed. Prepared for the Nechako Enhancement Society & Nechako Watershed Council.
- Turner, J., D. Stokes, and S. Duncan. 2009. An adaptive approach to reclaiming the First Coal Corporation Central South Property. *British Columbia Mine Reclamation Symposium* 2009.
- US EPA. 1996. AP-42, Chapter 3, Section 3.3, Gasoline and Industrial Diesel Engines.
- USDA NRCS. 2013. Plants Database. Available at <http://plants.usda.gov/java/>. Accessed 24 February 2013.

---

### **Section 3 – Assessment Process**

- Agency. 2013b. Environmental Impact Statement Guidelines for the Blackwater Project. 19 February 2013.
- Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency (Agency). 2013a. Environmental Impact Statement Guidelines for the Blackwater Project – Transmittal Letter. 19 February 2013.
- Environment Canada. 2014. Recovery Strategy for the Woodland Caribou, Southern Mountain population (*Rangifer tarandus caribou*) in Canada [Proposed]. *Species at Risk Act* Recovery Strategy Series. Environment Canada, Ottawa. viii + 68 pp.
- Government of BC. 2002a. *Environmental Assessment Act* SBC 2002, c. 43.
- Government of BC. 2002b. *Reviewable Project Regulation*. BC Reg. 370/2002.
- Government of BC. 2010. Environmental Assessment Office User Guide. Environmental Assessment Office. 40 pp.
- Government of British Columbia (BC). 1996. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 293.
- Government of Canada. 1991. The Federal Policy on Wetland Conservation. Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29.
- Government of Canada. 2012a *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. S.C. 2012. c. 19, s. 52
- Government of Canada. 2012b. Regulations Designating Physical Activities. SOR/2012-147.
- Government of Canada. 2013. Fisheries Protection Policy Statement. October 2013. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pol/index-eng.html>. Accessed 12 May 2014.
- Major Projects Management Office (MPMO). 2014. Project Agreement for the Blackwater Gold Mine in British Columbia (6 May 2013). Available at <http://mpmo.gc.ca/projects/161>. Accessed 4 March 2014.

### **Section 4 – Assessment Methodology**

- Agency (Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency). 2013a. Environmental Impact Statement Guidelines. Guidelines for the Preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement for an Environmental Assessment pursuant to the *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. Prepared for New Gold Inc. for the Blackwater Gold Project. February 2013.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Agency. 2013b. Operational Policy Statement for Assessing Cumulative Environmental Effects under the *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. May 2013. Available at <http://www.ceaa-acee.gc.ca/default.asp?lang=En&n=1DA9E048-1>. Accessed July 2013.
- Agency. 2013c. Operational Policy Statement for Addressing “Purpose of” and “Alternative Means” under the *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*.
- Agency. 2013d. Considering Aboriginal Traditional Knowledge in Environmental Assessments conducted under the *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act – Interim Principles*. Available at <http://www.ceaa-acee.gc.ca/default.asp?lang=En&n=4A795E76-1>.
- Agency. 2013e. Reference Guide Determining Whether a Project is Likely to Cause Significant Adverse Environmental Effects. Available at [www.ceaaacee.gc.ca/default.asp?lang=En&n=D213D286-1&offset=&toc=hide](http://www.ceaaacee.gc.ca/default.asp?lang=En&n=D213D286-1&offset=&toc=hide)).
- AMEC (AMEC Environment & Infrastructure). 2012. Blackwater Gold Project, Project Description. Prepared for: New Gold Inc. AMEC File: VE52095. October 2012.
- Archaeology Branch. 1998. Archaeological Impact Assessment Guidelines [revised edition], BC Ministry of Small Business, Tourism and Culture, Archaeology Branch, Victoria, BC.
- ASAC (Alberta Soils Advisory Committee). 1987. Soil Quality Criteria Relative to Disturbance and Reclamation. Prep. by Soil Quality Working Group. Alberta Agriculture. Edmonton, AB.
- BC EAO (British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office). 2013a. Blackwater Gold Project, Draft Application Information Requirements for New Gold Inc's Application for an Environmental Assessment Certificate pursuant to the British Columbia Environmental Assessment Act. Prepared by AMEC March 2013.
- BC EAO. 2013b. Guidelines for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects. Environmental Assessment Office 9 September 2013.
- BC Hydro. 2003. Approved Work Practices for Managing Riparian Vegetation. A Guide to Incorporating Riparian Environmental Concerns into the Management of Vegetation in BC Hydro's Transmission and Distribution Corridors. BC Hydro, DFO and MWLAP.
- BC MELP (British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Land and Parks). 1991. British Columbia Specifications and Guidelines for Geomatics. TRIM. Content Series Vol. 4. Release 2.0. Province of British Columbia
- BC MFLNRO (British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations). 2014a. *Forest and Range Practices Act* BMPs. Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs). Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>. Accessed February 2014.

- BC MFLNRO. 2014b. Water management plan, BMPs Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs). Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>. Accessed February 2014.
- BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks. 1998. Inventory Methods for Terrestrial Arthropods. Standards for Components of British Columbia's Biodiversity No. 40. Victoria, BC: Resources Inventory Committee, Province of British Columbia. 42 pp
- BC Ministry of Jobs, Tourism, and Skills Training. 2013. BC Major Projects Inventory. June 2013.
- BC MOE (British Columbia Ministry of Environment). 2006. British Columbia Approved Water Quality Guidelines. Available at [www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq). Accessed January 2013.
- BC MOE. 2008. Ambient Aquatic Life Guidelines for Iron. Victoria, BC.
- BC MOE. 2009. Manual of British Columbia Hydrometric Standards. Version 1.0.
- BC MOE. 2012. Procedures for Mitigating Impacts on Environmental Values (Environmental Mitigation Procedures). Final Working Draft, 11 June 2012.
- BC MOE. 2013. 2013 B.C. Best Practices Methodology for Quantifying Greenhouse Gas Emissions.
- BC MOF (British Columbia Ministry of Forests). 2001. Visual Impact Assessment Guidebook. Second edition. Forest Practices Branch. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/tasb/legsregs/fpc/fpcguide/VISUAL/VIA-01.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC MOF Forest Practices Branch. 1997. Visual Landscape Inventory. Procedures and Standards Manual. May 1997. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/risc/pubs/culture/visual/vli.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC MOF. 1998. Recreation Features Inventory Procedures and Standards Manual. October 1998. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/risc/pubs/culture/rfi/assets/rfi.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC MOFR (British Columbia Ministry of Forests and Range). 2010. Invasive Alien Plant Program Reference Guide. Part 1. Prepared by Range Branch Ministry of Forests and Range. June 2010.
- CCME (Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment). 2007. Environmental Quality Guidelines.
- Cox, R. and J. Cullington. 2009. Wetland Ways: Interim Guidelines for Wetland Protection and Conservation in British Columbia. Wetland Stewardship Partnership. Available at



- <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/wetlandways2009/Wetland%20Ways%20Ch%206%20Mining.pdf>. Accessed September 2013.
- Cumulative Effects Assessment Working Group. 1999. Cumulative Effects Assessment Practitioner's Guide. Available at <http://www.ceaa-acee.gc.ca/default.asp?lang=En&n=43952694-1&offset=&toc=hide>.
- DFO (Fisheries and Oceans Canada). 1995. Freshwater intake end-of-pipe fish screen guideline. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/library/223669.pdf>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 1998a. Habitat conservation and protection guidelines, 2nd edition. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, 19 pp.
- DFO. 1998b. Guidelines for the use of explosives in or near Canadian fisheries waters. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, Ontario.
- DFO. 2010a. Pathways of Effects – Fish passage issues. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010b. Pathways of Effects – Placement of materials or structures in water. Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2010c. Pathways of Effects – Change in timing, duration and frequency of flows. Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/frequency-frequence-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2010d. Pathways of Effects – Use of explosives. Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/frequency-frequence-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2010e. Pathways of Effects – Vegetation Clearing. Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2010f. Pathways of Effects – Grading. Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2010g. Pathways of Effects- Excavation. Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010h. Pathways of Effects – Use of industrial equipment. Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.

- DFO. 2010i. Pathways of Effects – Cleaning or maintenance of bridges or other structures. Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2013a. Measures to avoid causing harm to fish and fish habitat. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/measures-mesures/index-eng.html> Accessed 19 December 2013.
- DFO. 2013b. Fisheries protection policy statement. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, 29 October 2013. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pol/index-eng.html> Accessed 2013.
- EC (Environment Canada). 2009. Environmental Code of Practice for Metal Mines. Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/lcpe-cepa/default.asp?lang=En&n=CBE3CD59-1>. Accessed February 2014.
- EC. 2011. 2011 Metal Mining Environmental Effects Monitoring (EEM) Technical Guidance Document. Environment Canada, National Environmental Effects Monitoring Office. Ottawa, ON.
- Hatler, D.F., D. Blood, & A. Beal. 2003. Furbearer management guidelines–muskrat. FNLRO–Fish and Wildlife Division. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/trapping/#Management>. Accessed October 2013.
- Health Canada. 2010. Useful Information for Environmental Assessments.
- IPCC (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change). 2010. 2006 IPCC Guidelines for National Greenhouse Gas Inventories Vol 2. Energy. Chapter 3: Mobile Combustion. Available at [http://www.ipcc-nggip.iges.or.jp/public/2006gl/pdf/2\\_Volume2/V2\\_3\\_Ch3\\_Mobile\\_Combustion.pdf](http://www.ipcc-nggip.iges.or.jp/public/2006gl/pdf/2_Volume2/V2_3_Ch3_Mobile_Combustion.pdf). Accessed January 2013.
- Milko, R. 1998. Wetlands environmental assessment guideline. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa, ON.
- RIC (Resources Inventory Committee). 1996. Guidelines and Standards for Terrain Mapping in British Columbia. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.
- RIC. 1998. Standards for Terrestrial Ecosystem Mapping in British Columbia. Prepared by Ecosystems Working Group, Terrestrial Ecosystems Task Force, and Resource Inventory Committee. May 1998.
- RISC (Resource Inventory Standards Committee). 1999. Standards for ratings and suitability classes.

SCWG (Soil Classification Working Group). 1998. The Canadian System of Soil Classification (CSSC), 3rd Edition. Publication 1646. Research Branch. Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada. Ottawa, ON.

US EPA (United States Environmental Protection Agency). 2000. AP42, Fifth Edition. Compilation of Air Pollutant Emission Factors, Volume 1: Solid Waste Disposal. Chapter 2.1: Refuse Combustion. Available at <http://www.epa.gov/ttnchie1/ap42/ch02/final/c02s01.pdf> . Accessed January 2013.

US EPA. 2010. Motor Vehicle Emission Simulator (MOVES2010b). Available at <http://www.epa.gov/otaq/models/moves/>. Accessed: January 2013.

US EPA. 2012. Motor vehicle emission model. AP-42 Section 2.1 Refuse Combustion.

## ***Section 5 – Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects***

### ***Section 5.1.1.1 – Climate Baseline Summary***

BC MOE. 2013. Industrial Facility Greenhouse Gas Emissions Report Summaries, Consolidated B.C. Emissions Report Summaries data, 2013, Available at <http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/topic.page?id=14C1FA7186124D1C8CABA452C9DFCA56&title=Industrial%20Facility%20Greenhouse%20Gas%20Emissions%20Reports>. Accessed 6 August 2014.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 2012. British Columbia Greenhouse Gas Inventory Report 2010. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/ghg\\_inventory/pdf/pir-2010-full-report.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/ghg_inventory/pdf/pir-2010-full-report.pdf). Accessed August 2013.

Environment Canada (EC). 2013. National Inventory Report 1990-2011: Greenhouse Gas Sources and Sinks in Canada - Executive Summary. Greenhouse Gas Division. Gatineau, Quebec. Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/Publications/A07ADAA2-E349-481A-860F-9E2064F34822/NationalInventoryReportGreenhouseGasSourcesAndSinksInCanada19902011.pdf>. Accessed August 2013.

Knight Piésold Ltd. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project—2013 Hydrometeorology Report (VA101-457/6-12, Revision 0). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 04 November 2013.

World Meteorological Organization (WMO). 2007. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press. New York, New York. Available at [http://www.ipcc.ch/publications\\_and\\_data/ar4/wg1/en/contents.html](http://www.ipcc.ch/publications_and_data/ar4/wg1/en/contents.html). Accessed July 2013.

### ***Section 5.1.1.3 – Noise and Vibration Baseline Summary***

AMEC. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project – 2013 Noise and Vibration Baseline Report.

American National Standard Institute (ANSI). 1994. Procedures for Outdoor Measurement of Sound Pressure Level. American National Standard S.12.18-1994 (ASA 110-1994). Reaffirmed 6/23/2004.

BC Oil & Gas Commission (BC OGC). 2009. British Columbia Noise Control Best Practices Guideline. BC Oil & Gas Commission, March. Available at [www.bcogc.ca/bc-noise-control-best-practices-guideline](http://www.bcogc.ca/bc-noise-control-best-practices-guideline).

### ***Section 5.1.2.1 – Hydrology Baseline Summary***

British Columbia Ministry of Environment. 2009. Manual of British Columbia Hydrometric Standards. Version 1.0.

Knight Piésold. 2012. Blackwater Gold Project—Preliminary Winter Low Flow Summary Letter (VA12-01922). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 20 December 2012.

Knight Piésold. 2013a. Blackwater Gold Project—2013 Hydrometeorology Report (VA101-457/6-12, Revision 0). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 04 November 2013.

Knight Piésold. 2013b. Blackwater Gold Project— Watershed Modelling Report (VA101-457/6-6, Revision 1). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 17 January 2014.

Knight Piésold. 2013c. Blackwater Gold Project—Revised Baseline Tatelkuz Lake Levels Letter (VA13-01604). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 22 July 2013.

Obedkoff, W. 1999. Streamflow in the Caribou Region. Water Inventory Section Resources Branch, Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks.

### ***Section 5.1.2.2 – Surface Water and Sediment Quality Baseline Summary***

BC MOE. 2009. British Columbia Environmental Laboratory Manual.

BC MOE. 2012. Water and Air Baseline Monitoring Guidance Document for Mine Proponents and Operators.

### ***Section 5.1.2.3 – Hydrogeology Baseline Summary***

BC MOE. 2012. Water and air baseline monitoring guidance document for mine proponents and operators.

Knight Piésold Ltd. (Knight Piésold) 2013. Blackwater Gold Project—2012 Groundwater Quality Data Collection Summary.

Knight Piésold. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project, Numerical Groundwater Modelling Report.

Knight Piésold. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project, Watershed Modelling Report.

Knight Piésold. 2013b. 2012 Site Investigation Report. Ref No. VA101-457/6-1, Rev 0. September 2013.

Knight Piésold. 2013c. Blackwater 2012 Geotechnical Site Investigation Report.

Knight Piésold. 2013c. Feasibility Open Pit Slope Design Report.

Knight Piésold. 2013e. 2013 Geotechnical Site Investigation Report.

Knight Piésold. 2013h. Open Pit Water Management Report.

***Section 5.1.2.4 – Groundwater Quality Baseline Summary***

AMEC E&I. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project – Groundwater Quality 2012-2013 Baseline Report.

BC Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 2012. Water and air baseline monitoring guidance document for mine proponents and operators.

Knight Piésold Ltd. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project—2012 Groundwater Quality Data Collection Summary.

***Section 5.1.2.5 – Wetlands Baseline Summary***

AMEC. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project–Wetlands: 2011-2013 Baseline Report. Prepared for New Gold Inc., Burnaby, BC.

AMEC. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project–Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Baseline Report. Prepared for New Gold Inc. Burnaby, BC.

BC CDC (British Columbia Conservation Data Centre). 2012. BC Conservation Data Centre Home. Victoria, BC. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cdc>. Accessed January 2013.

BC MOE (British Columbia Ministry of Environment). 2006. British Columbia Approved Water Quality Guidelines. Available at [www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq). Accessed January 2013.

BC MOE. 2008. Ambient Aquatic Life Guidelines for Iron. Victoria, BC.

- BC MOE. 2012. Water and Air Baseline Monitoring Guidance Document for Mine Proponents and Operators. [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/epd/industrial/mining/guidance\\_agree.htm](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/epd/industrial/mining/guidance_agree.htm). Accessed August 2013.
- BC MOFR and BC MOE (British Columbia Ministry of Forests and Range and British Columbia Ministry of Environment). 2010. Field Manual for Describing Terrestrial Ecosystems. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. Victoria, BC. Land Manag. Handb. No. 25.
- Environment Canada. 2013. Bird Conservation Strategy for Bird Conservation Region 10 in Pacific and Yukon Region – Northern Rockies. Canadian Wildlife Service, Environment Canada. Delta, BC. 109 pages + appendices.
- Hanson, L. Swanson, D. Ewing, G. Grabas, S. Meyer, L. Ross, M. Watmough, and J. Kirkby. 2008. Wetland ecological functions assessment: and overview of approaches. A. Atlantic Region. Technical Report Series Number 497. Available at [http://www.wetkit.net/docs/WA\\_TechReport497\\_en.pdf](http://www.wetkit.net/docs/WA_TechReport497_en.pdf). Accessed 2013.
- Milko, R. 1998. Wetlands environmental assessment guideline. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa, ON.
- RIC (Resource Inventory Committee). 1998. Standard for Terrestrial Ecosystem Mapping in British Columbia. Available at <http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/risc/pubs/teecolo/tem/indextem.htm>. Accessed March 2013.
- Smith, R.D., A. Ammann, C. Bartoldus, and M.M. Brinson. 1995. An approach for assessing wetland functions using hydrogeomorphic classification, reference wetlands, and functional indices. Technical Report WRP-DE-9, U.S. Corps of Engineers, Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, vicksburg, MS.

#### ***Section 5.1.2.6 – Fish and Fish Habitat Baseline Summary***

- Anderson, M.J. 2001. A new method for non-parametric multivariate analysis of variance. *Australian Journal of Ecology* 26: 32–46.
- Avison (Avison Management Services Ltd.). 2010a. Baseline sediment and biota contaminant study for Chu Molybdenum Mining Project. Prepared for TTM Resources Inc. by Avison Management Services, Vanderhoof, BC. January 2010.
- Avison. 2010b. 2008/2009 fish distribution inventory for Chu Molybdenum Mining Project. Prepared for TTM Resources Inc. by Avison Management Services, Vanderhoof, BC. April 2010.
- Avison. 2010c. 2009 reconnaissance lake inventory of Lake 113 for Chu Molybdenum Mining Project. Prepared for TTM Resources Inc. by Avison Management Services, Vanderhoof, BC. April 2010.



- Avison. 2010d. 2009 reconnaissance lake inventory of Mills Lake for Chu Molybdenum Mining Project. Prepared for TTM Resources Inc. by Avison Management Services, Vanderhoof, BC. April 2010.
- Barbour, M.T., J. Gerritsen, B.D. Snyder and J.B. Stribling. 1999. Rapid bioassessment protocols for use in streams and wadeable rivers: periphyton, benthic macroinvertebrates and fish. Second Edition. EPA 841-B-99-002. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; Office of Water; Washington, D.C.
- BC CDC (BC Conservation Data Centre). 2014. Conservation Status Report: *Acroloxus coloradensis*. British Columbia Ministry of Environment. Available at: <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>.
- BC CDC (British Columbia Conservation Data Centre). 2013. BC Species and Ecosystems Explorer. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/> (accessed 2012).
- BC FISS (British Columbia Fisheries Inventory Summary System). 2011. Fisheries Society of BC. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fish/fiss/index.html> BC FishWizard (accessed 2012).
- BC ILMB (British Columbia Integrated Land Management Bureau). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. January 1997. Available at [http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/vanderhoof\\_lrmp/index.html](http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/vanderhoof_lrmp/index.html) (accessed 2012).
- BC ILMB. 2010. Vanderhoof Sustainable Forest Management Plan. Vanderhoof Forest District Public Advisory group. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfd/library/FIA/2010/LBIP\\_8033003.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfd/library/FIA/2010/LBIP_8033003.pdf) (accessed 2012).
- BC MFLNRO (British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations). 2011. Freshwater Atlas. Accessed at: <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/geobc/FWA>.
- BC MOE (British Columbia Ministry of Environment). 1997a. Ambient water quality criteria for dissolved oxygen: overview report. British Columbia Ministry of Environment. February 1997. Accessed at: [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq/BCguidelines/do/do\\_over.html](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq/BCguidelines/do/do_over.html).
- BC MOE. 2001. Ambient water quality guidelines for temperature: overview. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq/BCguidelines/temptech/temperature.html> (accessed 2012).
- BC MOE. 2006. British Columbia Approved Water Quality Guidelines. Retrieved from [www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq). Accessed 16 August 2013.
- BC MOE. 2007. Water quality criteria for nutrients and algae. BC Ministry of Environment, Resource Quality Section, Water Management Branch, Victoria, BC.

- BC MOE. 2012a. Water and air baseline monitoring guidance document for mine proponents and operators. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. October 9, 2012.
- BC MOE. 2012b. Draft ambient water quality guidelines for sulphate. Victoria, BC.
- BC MOE. 2013a. Fisheries Information Summary System-Fisheries Inventory Data Query. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. Available at:  
<http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/fidq/fissPointsSelect.do> (accessed 2012).
- BC MOE. 2013b. Ambient water quality guidelines for mercury. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. Available at:  
<http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq/BCguidelines/mercury/mercury.html> (accessed 2012).
- BC MOE. 2013c. Draft ambient water quality guidelines for selenium. Technical Appendix. Update. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. Available at:  
[http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/.../se\\_wqg\\_public\\_review\\_raft\\_Oct2012.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/.../se_wqg_public_review_raft_Oct2012.pdf) (accessed 2012).
- BC MOF (British Columbia Ministry of Forests). 1995. Riparian management area guidebook. Forest Practice Code of British Columbia. Province of British Columbia. Victoria, BC. 68pp.
- BC MOF. 1998. Fish stream identification guidebook. Forest Practice Code of British Columbia. Province of British Columbia. Victoria, BC.
- Beatty, J.M., L.E. McDonald, F.M. Westcott, and C.J. Perrin. 2006. Guidelines for sampling benthic invertebrates in British Columbia streams. Prepared for BC Ministry of Environment. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/epd/regions/.../wq.../bi-sampling-06update.pdf> (accessed 2012).
- Beauchamp, D.A., D.L. Parrish, and R.A. Whaley. 2009. Sampling coldwater fish in large standing waters. Pages 97-118 in Standard Sampling Methods for North American Freshwater Fishes. S.A. Bonar, W.A. Hubert, and D. Willis (eds.). American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.
- Bennett, S. 2010. Skeena BEAST09: supporting documentation for the Skeena BEAST09 RCA Predictive Model. BioLogic Consulting, London, ON.
- Bradbury, C., A.S. Power, and M.M. Roberge. 2001. Standard methods guide for classification/quantification of lacustrine habitat in Newfoundland and Labrador. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, St. John's, NF. 60 p.
- Brandt, S. B. 1996. Acoustic assessment of fish abundance and distribution. Pages 385-432 in Fisheries Techniques, 2nd edition. L.A. Nielsen and D.L. Johnson (eds.). American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

- Bray, J.R., and J.T. Curtis. 1957. An ordination of the upland forest communities of southern Wisconsin. *Ecological Monographs* 27: 325-349.
- Burgner, R.L. 1991. Life history of sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*). Pages 16-22 in Groot, C. and Margolis, L., editors. 1991. *Pacific salmon life histories*. UBC Press, Vancouver, BC.
- Burns, J.F. 1977. A reconnaissance survey of Kuyakuz Lake 01689LNRS. Report ID: 28864. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/acat/public/welcome.do> (accessed 2012).
- Bussanich, R., B. Murray, and R. Bocking. 2005. Assessment of fish population and lakeshore spawning habitat in Coquitlam Reservoir – Year 1: Studies to address fish population and reservoir ecology, 2004. BCRP Report No. 04.Co.03.
- CABIN (Canadian Aquatic Biomonitoring Network). 2011. CABIN Resources. Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/rcba-cabin/default.asp?lang=En&n=74876ADD-1> (accessed 2012).
- CABIN. 2012. CABIN Database. Available at [http://cabin.cciw.ca/Application/birc\\_login.asp?Lang=en-ca](http://cabin.cciw.ca/Application/birc_login.asp?Lang=en-ca) (accessed 2012).
- CCME (Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment). 1998. Protocol for derivation of tissue residue guidelines for the protection of wildlife consumers of aquatic biota. Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment, Winnipeg.
- CCME. 2000. Canadian tissue residue guidelines for the protection of wildlife consumers of aquatic biota: methylmercury. In: *Canadian Environmental Quality Guidelines, 1999*. Excerpt from Publication No. 1299.
- CCME. 2007. Environmental Quality Guidelines. Available at <http://ceqg-rcqe.ccme.ca/>. Accessed July 2013.
- CCME. 2013. Canadian Water Quality Guidelines for the Protection of Aquatic Life: Cadmium. Available at <http://ceqg-rcqe.ccme.ca/>.
- Clark, M.J.R. (ed.). 2003. *British Columbia field sampling manual*. BC Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection, Water, Air and Climate Change Branch. Victoria, BC.
- Clarke, K.R., and R.H. Green. 1988. Statistical design and analysis for a 'biological effects' study. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 46: 213-226.
- Clarke, K.R., and R.M. Warwick. 2001. *Change in marine communities: an approach to statistical analysis and interpretation*. Second edition. PRIMER-E: Plymouth, UK.
- Cochran, W.G. 1977. *Sampling techniques*. 3rd edition. Wiley and Sons, New York.

- Coombes, D.M.V. 1985a. A reconnaissance survey of Laidman Lake 01815UEUT. Report ID: 28859. Fisheries Branch, BC Ministry of Environment. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/acat/public/welcome.do> (accessed 2012).
- Coombes, D.M.V. 1985b. A reconnaissance survey of Top Lake 01045UEUT. Report ID: 28866. Fisheries Branch, BC Ministry of Environment. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/acat/public/welcome.do> (accessed 2012).
- COSEWIC (Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada). 2003. COSEWIC assessment and update status report on the white sturgeon *Acipenser transmontanus* in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada. Ottawa. vii + 51 pp. ([www.sararegistry.gc.ca/status/status\\_e.cfm](http://www.sararegistry.gc.ca/status/status_e.cfm)).
- COSEWIC. 2013. Wildlife species assessments. November 2012. Available at [http://www.cosepac.gc.ca/eng/sct0/index\\_e.cfm](http://www.cosepac.gc.ca/eng/sct0/index_e.cfm) (accessed 2012).
- Crawley, M.J. 2007. The R book. Hoboken (NJ): Wiley.
- de Zwart, D., S.D. Dyer, L. Posthuma, and C.P. Hawkins. 2006. Predictive models attribute effects on fish assemblages to toxicity and habitat alteration. *Ecological Applications* 16: 1295-1310.
- DeForest, D. 2009. Database of selenium concentrations in fish tissues from reference sites. Washington DC (US): North American Metals Council - Selenium Working Group. 33p. Accessed on-line at <http://www.namc.org/docs/00043670.PDF>
- Depew, D.C., N.M. Burgess, M.R. Anderson, R. Baker, S.P. Bhavsar, R.A. Bodaly, C.S. Eckley, M.S. Evans, N. Gantner, J.A. Graydon, K. Jacobs, J.E. LeBlanc, V.L. St. Louis, and L.M. Campbell. 2013. An overview of mercury concentrations in freshwater fish species: a national fish mercury dataset for Canada. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 70: 436-451.
- DWB (DWB Forestry Services Ltd.). 2001. 2001 Stream inventory: A18157 – Top Lake. Final Report, FDIS Files, Non-Fish-Bearing Status Reports, Arcview Mapping Data, and Photo Documentation. Prepared for Slocan Forest Products Ltd. Plateau Division. Vanderhoof, BC.
- DWB. 2002. 2002 Stream inventory. Vanderhoof Operating Area 14. Final Report, FDIS Files, Non-Fish-Bearing Status Reports, Arcview Mapping Data, and Photo Documentation. Prepared for Slocan Forest Products Ltd. Plateau Division. Vanderhoof, BC.
- DWB. 2008. Stream crossing restoration of an unnamed tributary to Tatelkuz Lake (Site 60), Nechako Watershed, Northern Interior Forest Region. NOTSA242668,2668051, 2007/2008. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfd/library/fia/2007/LBIP\\_2668051.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfd/library/fia/2007/LBIP_2668051.pdf) (accessed 2012).

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- EC (Environment Canada). 2010. Canadian Aquatic Biomonitoring Network (CABIN) field manual Wadeable streams. Environment Canada, Dartmouth, Nova Scotia. March 2010.
- EC. 2011. 2011 Metal Mining Environmental Effects Monitoring (EEM) Technical Guidance Document. National Environmental Effects Monitoring Office. Ottawa, ON.
- Ecofor (Ecofor Consulting Ltd.). 2004. 2004 Stream classification project for Areas 29, 30, 33, 34, 35, 37, 38, 45. Final Report, FDIS Files, Non-Fish-Bearing Status Reports, Arcview Mapping Data, and Photo Documentation. Prepared for Canadian Forest Products Plateau Division. Vanderhoof, BC.
- Eisler, R. 2006. Mercury hazards to living organisms. Taylor and Francis, Boca Raton, FL.
- Excoffier, L., G. Laval, and S. Schneider. 2006. Arlequin 3.1. An integrated software package for population genetic data analysis. Computational and Molecular Population Genetics Laboratory (CMPG), Department of Zoology, University of Berne. Available at <http://cmpg.unibe.ch/software/arlequin3> (accessed 2012).
- Feldman, D. 2006. A report to the DEQ Water Quality Planning Bureau on the proper interpretation of two recently developed macroinvertebrate bioassessment models. Montana Department of Environmental Quality, Helena, MT. 17 pp.
- Ford, B.S, Higgins, P.S., Lewis, A.F., Cooper, K.L., Watson, T.A, Gee, C.M., Ennis, G.L., and Sweeting, R.L. 1995. Literature reviews of the life history, habitat requirements, and mitigation/compensation strategies for thirteen sport fish species in the Peace, Liard, and Columbia River drainages in British Columbia. Canadian Manuscript Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences No. 2321.
- Golder (Golder Associates Ltd.). 1998. Reconnaissance level (1:20,000) fish and fish habitat inventory of Slokan Group Plateau (Vanderhoof) Division Operating Area – 1997 Nechako River Watershed 180-00000; Stuart River Watershed 182-00000; West Road (Blackwater) River Watershed; 170-00000.
- Griffiths, D. 1997. Local and regional fish species richness in North American lacustrine fish. *Journal of Animal Ecology* 66: 49-56.
- Hargett, E.G., J.R. ZumBerge, and C.P. Hawkins. 2005. Development of RIVPACS model of Wadeable streams of Wyoming. Wyoming Department of Environmental Quality, Water Quality Division. 64 pp.
- Health Canada. 2013. Mercury and human health. Available at <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/hl-vs/iyh-vsv/environ/merc-eng.php> (accessed 2012).
- Hilsenhoff, W.L. 1987. An improved biotic index of organic stream pollution. *Great Lakes Entomologist* 20:31-39.

- Hubler, S. 2008. PREDATOR: Development and use of RIVPACS-type macroinvertebrate models to assess the biotic condition of wadeable Oregon streams (November 2005 models). Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, Laboratory and Environmental Assessment Division. Version 1.1, 52 pp.
- Interviews with Lhoosk'uz Dene Elders. 2013. Interview with LDN elders. Prince George, BC, Canada. July 2013.
- Johnston, J.M. 1981. Development and evaluation of hydroacoustic techniques for instantaneous fish population estimates in shallow lakes. Washington Department of Game Fishery Research Report No. 81-18, Olympia.
- Johnston, N.T., and P.A. Slaney. 1996. Fish habitat assessment procedures. Prepared for the BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks and the BC Ministry of Forests, Vancouver, BC.
- Jones, C., K.M. Somers, B. Craig, and T.B. Reynoldson. 2004. Ontario benthos biomonitoring network protocol manual. Version 1.0. Ontario Ministry of Environment, Dorset, ON. May 2004.
- Keeley, E.R., P.A. Slaney, and D. Zaldokas. 1996. Estimates of production benefits for salmonid fishes from stream restoration initiatives. Province of British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks and Ministry of Forests. Watershed Restoration Management Report No. 4.
- Kelly, M.G. 2001. Use of similarity measures for quality control of benthic diatom samples. *Water Research* 35: 2784-2788.
- Klinkenberg, B. (Editor). 2012. *E-Fauna BC: Electronic Atlas of the Fauna of British Columbia* [efauna.bc.ca]. Lab for Advanced Spatial Analysis, Department of Geography, University of British Columbia, Vancouver. Accessed at: <http://linnet.geog.ubc.ca/efauna/Atlas/Atlas.aspx?sciname=Acroloxus coloradensis&ilifeform=190>.
- Koning, C.D., and E.R. Keeley. 1997. Salmonid biostandards for estimating production benefits of fish habitat restoration procedures. Chapter 3 in P.A. Slaney and D. Zaldokas (ed.) *Fish habitat rehabilitation procedures*. Watershed Restoration Technical Circular No. 9.
- Krebs, C. 1989. *Ecological methodology*. HarperCollins, New York. 654 pp.
- Maiolie, M. A., G. P. Schoby, W. J. Ament, and W. Harryman. 2008. Lake Pend Oreille 2006 kokanee and rainbow trout research efforts. Idaho Department of Fish and Game Report Number 08-06.



- Mandaville, S.M. 2002. Benthic macroinvertebrates in freshwaters – taxa tolerance values, metrics and protocols. Project H-1. Soil and Water Conservation Society of Metro Halifax. Available at <http://chebucto.ca/Science/SWCS/SWCS.html> (accessed 2012).
- McDermott, H., T. Paull, and S. Strachan. 2010. Canadian Aquatic Biomonitoring network: laboratory methods – processing, taxonomy, and quality control of benthic macroinvertebrates. Prepared for Environment Canada.
- McPhail, J.D. 2007. The freshwater fishes of British Columbia. The University of Alberta Press. Edmonton, AB.
- New Gold. 2012. Blackwater Gold Project: Project Description. Prepared for New Gold Inc. by AMEC Environment and Infrastructure. October 2012.
- Nowosad, D.M., and E.B. Taylor. 2013. Habitat variation and invasive species as factors influencing the distribution of native fishes in the lower Fraser River Valley, British Columbia, with an emphasis on brassy minnow (*Hybognathus hankinsoni*). *Canadian Journal of Zoology* 91: 71-81.
- Parsons, T.R., M. Takahashi, and B. Hargrave. 1984. *Biological Oceanographic Processes*. Pergamon Press, Oxford, UK.
- Pritchard, J.K., M. Stephens, and P. Donnelly. 2000. Inference of population structure using multilocus genotype data. *Genetics* 155: 845-959.
- Ptolemy, J. and R. Vennesland. 2003. Update COSEWIC status report on the white sturgeon *Acipenser transmontanus* in Canada, in COSEWIC assessment and update status report on the white sturgeon, *Acipenser transmontanus*, in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). Ottawa. 1-51 pp.
- R Core Team. 2012. R: A language and environment for statistical computing. R Foundation for Statistical Computing, Vienna, Austria. ISBN 3-900051-07-0. Available at <http://www.R-project.org/> (accessed 2012).
- Raleigh, R.F., T. Hickman, R.C. Solomon, and P.C. Nelson. 1984. Habitat suitability information: rainbow trout. United States Fish and Wildlife Service. Report No. FWS/OBS-82/10.60. January 1984.
- Raymond, M., and R.R. Rousset. 2001. GENEPOP (Version 3.3): Population genetics software for exact tests and ecumenism. Available at <http://www.cefe.cnrs-mop.fr/> (accessed 2012).
- Redenbach, Z., and E.B. Taylor. 2003. Evidence for bimodal hybrid zones between two species of char (*Salvelinus*) in northwestern North America. *Journal of Evolutionary Biology* 16: 1135-1148.

- Reynoldson, T.B., D.M. Rosenberg, and V.H. Resh. 2001. Comparison of models predicting invertebrate assemblages for biomonitoring in the Fraser River catchment, British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 58: 1395-1410.
- Reynoldson, T.B., D.M. Rosenberg, K.E. Day, R.H. Norris, and V.H. Resh. 1997. The reference condition: a comparison of multimetric and multivariate approaches to assess water-quality impairment using benthic macroinvertebrates. *Journal of the North American Benthological Society* 16: 833-852.
- Ricker, W.E. 1975. Computation and interpretation of biological statistics of fish populations. *Bulletin of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada* No. 191.
- Rieberger, K. 1992. Metal concentrations in fish tissue from uncontaminated B.C. lakes. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Water Quality Section. August 1992.
- RISC (Resource Inventory Standards Committee). 1997. British Columbia fish collection methods and standards. Version 4.0. January 1997.
- RISC. 1999a. Fish and fish habitat inventory: lake survey form field guide. Errata in March 2000. Province of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.
- RISC. 1999b. Reconnaissance (1:20,000) fish and fish habitat inventory: site card field guide. Errata in March 2000. Province of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.
- RISC. 2000. Reconnaissance (1:20,000) fish and fish habitat inventory: reach information guide. Version 1.0. Province of British Columbia, Victoria, BC. March 2000.
- RISC. 2001. Fish and fish habitat inventory: standards and procedures. Version 2.0. Province of British Columbia, Victoria, BC. April 2001.
- RISC. 2008. Fish and fish habitat inventory: lake survey form field guide. Version 2.0. April 2008. Province of British Columbia, Victoria, BC. April 2001.
- RISC. 2009a. Bathymetric standards for lake inventories. Version 3.0. Province of British Columbia.
- RISC. 2009b. The Canadian Aquatic Biomonitoring Network: field manual. Version 1.0. Prepared by BC Ministry of Environment, Science & Information Branch, Watershed and Aquifer Science Section for the Resources Information Standards Committee. Province of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.
- Roberge, M., J.M.B. Hume, C.K. Minns, and T. Slaney. 2002. Life history characteristics of freshwater fishes occurring in British Columbia and the Yukon, with major emphasis on stream habitat characteristics. *Canadian Manuscript Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* No. 2611.

- SAS. 2013. JMP 10 statistical software. SAS Institute Inc.
- Schindler, E.U., D. Sebastian, G.F. Andrusak, H. Andrusak, L. Vidmanic, J. Stockner, F. Pick, L.M. Ley, P.B. Hamilton, M. Bassett, and K.I. Ashley. 2009. The 2006 Kootenay Lake fertilization experiment, year 15 (north arm) and year 3 (south arm). BC Ministry of Environment Fisheries Project Report No. RD 126.
- Schoby, G P., N.C. Wahl, A.M. Dux, W.J. Ament, and W. Harryman. 2009. Lake Pend Oreille 2007 kokanee and rainbow trout research efforts. Idaho Department of Fish and Game Report Number 09-08.
- Scott, W.B., and E.J. Crossman. 1973. Freshwater fishes of Canada. Bulletin of the Fisheries Resources Board Canada No. 184.
- Simmonds, E.J., and D.N. MacLennan. 2005. Fisheries acoustics. Chapman and Hall, London.
- Stables, T.B., and C.J. Perrin. 2010. Abundance and biomass of fish in Stave Reservoir in October 2009. Report prepared for BC Hydro by Limnotek Research and Development Inc. and Shuksan Fisheries Consulting. 58p.
- Stables, T.B., and G.L. Thomas. 1992. Acoustic measurement of trout distributions in Spada Lake, Washington, using stationary transducers. *Journal of Fish Biology* 40:191-203.
- Stark, E.J. 2006. Dworshak kokanee population and entrainment assessment, 2005 Annual Report. Idaho Department of Fish and Game Report Number 06-37.
- Tamkee P., E.A. Parkinson, and E.B. Taylor. 2010. The influence of Wisconsinan glaciation and contemporary stream hydrology on microsatellite DNA variation in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 67: 919-935.
- Taylor, E.B., and J.L. Gow. 2007. An analysis of population structure in kokanee (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) from tributaries of the Upper and Lower Arrow Lakes, West Kootenay Region, British Columbia, using microsatellite DNA. Prepared for BC Hydro by the Department of Zoology, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC.
- Taylor E.B., P. Tamkee, G. Sterling, and W. Hughson. 2007. Microsatellite DNA analysis of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) from western Alberta, Canada: native status and evolutionary distinctiveness of "Athabasca" rainbow trout. *Conservation Genetics* 8: 1-15.
- Thorne, R.E. 1983. Hydroacoustics. Pages 239-260 in *Fisheries Techniques*. L. Nielsen, and D. Johnson (eds.). American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.
- Triton Environmental Consultants Ltd. (Triton). 2006. Stream classification within CanFor's (Plateau Division) Planning Cell #s 70, 72, 73, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, and 81. Draft

- Report, FDIS Files, Non Fish Bearing Status Reports, Arcview Mapping Data, and Photo Documentation. Prepared for Canfor Forest Products Plateau Division. Vanderhoof, BC.
- Wahl, N.C., A.M. Dux, W.J. Ament, and W. Harryman. 2010. Lake Pend Oreille 2008 kokanee and rainbow trout research efforts. Idaho Department of Fish and Game Report Number 10-02.
- Walsh, H.G., and Hale. 1977. A reconnaissance survey of Tatelkuz Lake 01419LNRS. Report ID: 10595. Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/acat/public/welcome.do> (accessed 2012).
- Weir, B.S., and C.C. Cockerham. 1984. Estimating F-statistics for the analysis of population structure. *Evolution* 38: 1358-1370.
- Wetzel, R.G. 2001. *Limnology: lake and river ecosystems*. Third Edition. Academic Press, CA.
- Yeow, A., S. Strachan, S. Pappas, and A. Ryan. 2011. Water quality in the Georgia Basin 2003 to 2007. Environment Canada. Available at <http://www.cohencommission.ca/DownloadExhibit.php?ExhibitID=1057> (accessed 2012).
- Yule, D.L. 2000. Comparison of horizontal acoustic and purse-seine estimates of salmonid densities and sizes in eleven Wyoming waters. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 20: 759-775.

### ***5.1.3.1 – Geology and Geochemistry Baseline Summary***

- AMEC. 2013. Feasibility Study, Blackwater Gold Project. Report prepared for New Gold Inc.
- British Columbia Ministry of Energy and Mines. 1998. Policy for Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage at Minesites in British Columbia.
- Diakow, L.J. and V.M. Levson. 1997. Bedrock and Surficial Geology of the Southern Nechako Plateau, Central British Columbia (93F/2, 3, 6, 7). *Geoscience Maps* 1997- 2 (map).
- Diakow, L.J., I.C.L. Webster, T.A. Richards, and H.W. Tipper. 1997. Geology of the Fawnie and Nechako Ranges, Southern Nechako Plateau, Central British Columbia (96F/2,3,6,7). Paper 1997-2; in *Interior Plateau Geoscience Project: Summary of Geological, Geochemical and Geophysical Studies*.
- Diakow, L.J., I.C.L. Webster, V.M. Levson, and T.R. Giles. 1994. Bedrock and Surficial Geology of the Fawnie Creek Map Area (93F/3). Open File 1994-2, BC MEMPR (Geological Survey of Canada).

- Ella, G.F., S. Stein, T.H. Dixon, M. Craymer, T.S. James, S. Mazzotti, R.K. Dokka. 2007. Observation of glacial isostatic adjustment in "stable" North America with GPS. *Geophysical Research Letters*, Vol. 34, L02306, doi: 10.1029/2006GL027081.
- Friedman, R.M, L.J. Diakow, R.A. Lane, and J.K. Mortensen. 2001. "New U–Pb age constraints on latest Cretaceous magmatism and associated mineralization in the Fawnie Range, Nechako Plateau, central British Columbia," *Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences* 38, 619–637.
- GARD Guide. 2009. [www.gardguide.com](http://www.gardguide.com).
- Price, W.A. 1997. Draft guidelines and recommended methods for the Prediction of Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage at Minesites in British Columbia.
- Price, W.A. 2009. Prediction Manual for Drainage Chemistry from Sulphidic Geologic Materials. CANMET - Mining and Mineral Sciences Laboratories. Natural Resources Canada. Prepared for Mine Environment Neutral Drainage (MEND) Program. MEND Report 1.20.1. December 2009.
- Sillitoe, R.H. and J.W. Hedenquist. 2003. Linkages between volcanotectonic settings, ore-fluid compositions, and epithermal precious metal deposits. *Society of Economic Geologists Special Publication* 10, 315–343.

#### **5.1.3.2 – Soils and Terrain Baseline Summary**

- Alberta Soils Advisory Committee. 1987. Soil Quality Criteria Relative to Disturbance and Reclamation. Prepared by Soil Quality Working Group. Alberta Agriculture. Edmonton, AB.
- AMEC. 2013. Baseline Report Soils, Terrain, and Surficial Geology. Prepared for New Gold Inc. Environment & Infrastructure. Edmonton, AB.
- BC MOF. 1999. Mapping and Assessing Terrain Stability Guidebook. Second edition. Forest Practices Code of British Columbia. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/TASB/LEGSREGS/FPC/FPCGUIDE/terrain/ziped/terrain.pdf>. Accessed 2012.
- British Columbia Department of Agriculture (BC DOA). 1974. Soils of the Nechako – Francois Lake Area Soil Survey. Report #22. Kelowna, BC.
- British Columbia Ministry of Energy. 1998. Application requirements for a permit approving the mine plan and reclamation program pursuant to the Mines Act RSBC 1996, c. 293. Available at <http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/MINING/PERMITTINGRECLAMATION/PERMITAPPLICATIONREQUIREMENTS/Pages/default.aspx>. Accessed 2012.

British Columbia Ministry of Forests (BC MOF) and British Columbia Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 1998. Field manual for describing terrestrial ecosystems. BC MOF and BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Victoria, BC.

Dawson, A.B. 1989. Soils of the Prince George – McLeod Lake Area Soil Survey. BC MOE. Report #23. Victoria, BC.

Gregorich, E.G., L.W. Turchenek, M.R. Carter, and D.A. Angers. 2001. Soil and environmental science directory. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Howes, D.E. and E. Kenk., eds. 1997. Terrain classification system for British Columbia (version 2). BC MOE. Recreational Fisheries Branch and BC Ministry of Crown Lands, Surveys and Resource Mapping Branch, Victoria, BC.

Plouffe, A., V.M. Levson, and D.J. Mate. 2004. Surficial Geology, Nechako River, British Columbia. Geological Survey of Canada, Map 2067A, scale 1:250,000.

Resource Inventory Committee (RIC). 1996. Guidelines and standards for terrain mapping in British Columbia. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.

RIC. 1998. Standard for terrestrial ecosystem mapping in British Columbia. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.

Ryan, P.J., S.P. Gessel, and R.J. Zasoski. 1986. Acid tolerance of Pacific Northwest conifers in solution culture. *Plant and Soil* 96, 239-257 p.

### **5.1.3.3 – Vegetation Baseline Summary**

Banner, A and W. MacKenzie. 1998. Extension Note 17. Riparian Areas: Providing Landscape Habitat Diversity Part 5 of 7. Ministry of Forests Research Program.

BC Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 2004. Provincial Non-Spatial Old Growth Order. Available at <http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/policiesguidelinesandassessments/oldgrowth/>. Accessed July 2013.

BC MFLNRO. 2013b. VRI: Vegetation Resource Inventory. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hts/vri/>. Accessed March 2013.

BC Ministry of Agriculture. 2002. Field Guide to Noxious and Other Selected Weeds of BC. Available at <http://www.agf.gov.bc.ca/cropprot/weedguid/weedguid.htm>. Accessed February 2014.

BC Ministry of Environment (MOE). 2013a. EcoCat: The Ecological Reports Catalogue. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/ecocat/>. Accessed March 2013.



## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- BC Ministry of Environment, Lands & Parks. 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. Victoria, BC: Ministry of Employment & Investment, Ministry of Environment, Lands & Parks, Ministry of Forests.
- BC Ministry of Forests and Range (MOFR) and British Columbia MOE. 2010. Field Manual for Describing Ecosystem Upland Ecosystems, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition.
- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (MFLNRO). 2013a. The Invasive Alien Plant Program (IAPP) Application. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hra/plants/application.htm>. Accessed March 2013.
- BC MOE. 2013b. CLIR: Cross-Linked Information Resources. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/clir/>. Accessed March 2013.
- British Columbia (BC) Conservation Data Centre (CDC). 2013. BC Conservation Data Centre. Victoria, BC. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/atrisk/toolintro.html>. Accessed March 2013.
- California Natural Resources Agency (CNRA). 2009. Protocols for Surveying and Evaluating Impacts to Special Status Native Plant Populations and Natural Communities. State of California. Department of Fish and Game. November 2009.
- Cariboo Chilcotin Coast Invasive Plant Committee. 2012. Regional Strategic Plan for Invasive Plant Management. Version 2.4. March 30, 2012. Available at <http://www.cccipc.ca/images/stories/pdf/RSP2012.pdf>. Accessed March 2013.
- Clason, A. and R. Moody. 2013. New Gold Blackwater Project Whitebark Pine Management UPDATE January 2013. Keefer Ecological Services Ltd. Smithers, BC.
- Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). 2010. COSEWIC assessment and status report on the Whitebark Pine (*Pinus albicaulis*) in Canada. Ottawa. x = 44pp. Available at [www.sararegistry.gc.ca/status/status\\_e.cfm](http://www.sararegistry.gc.ca/status/status_e.cfm). Accessed October 2011.
- Data BC. 2012. Biogeoclimatic Ecosystem Classification (BEC) Version 8. WHSE\_FOREST\_VEGETATION.BEC\_BIOGEOCLIMATIC\_POLY. Available at <http://www.data.gov.bc.ca/>. Accessed July 2013.
- Data BC. 2013a. Endangered Species and Ecosystems - Non-Confidential Occurrences. Available at <http://www.data.gov.bc.ca/dbc/search/detail.page?ms=url:apps.gov.bc.ca&recordid=173570&title=Endangered%20Species%20and%20Ecosystems%20-%20Non%20Sensitive%20Occurrences>. Accessed January 2013.
- Data BC. 2013b. Endangered Species and Ecosystems - Masked Occurrences. Available at <http://www.data.gov.bc.ca/dbc/search/detail.page?ms=url:apps.gov.bc.ca&recordid=17>

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



3569&title=Endangered%20Species%20and%20Ecosystems%20-%20Masked%20Sensitive%20Occurrences. Access January 2013.

DataBC. 2013c. TRIM: Digital Terrain Resource Information Management. Available at <http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/crgb/pba/trim/>. Accessed 2013.

DeLong, C., D. Tanner, and M.J. Jull. 1993. A Field Guide for Site Identification and Interpretation for the Southwest Portion of the Prince George Forest Region. British Columbia Ministry of Forests. Land Management Handbook Number 24.

Demarchi, D.A. 2011. The British Columbia Ecoregion Classification. Third Edition. March 2011. Ecosystem Information Section. Ministry of Environment. Victoria, BC. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/ecology/ecoregions>. Accessed March 2013.

Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger and J. Pojar eds. 2002. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 8: General Summary, Maps and Keys. BC Min. Sustain. Res. Manage., and BC Min. For., Victoria, BC, 457 pp.

Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar, eds. 1999. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 3: Dicotyledons (Diapensiaceae through Onagraceae). BC Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and BC Min. For., Victoria, BC, 423 pp.

Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar, eds. 1999. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 4: Dicotyledons (Orobanchaceae through Rubiaceae). BC Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and BC Min. For., Victoria, BC, 427 pp.

Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar, eds. 2000. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 5: Dicotyledons (Salicaceae through Zygophyllaceae) and Pteridophytes. BC Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and BC Min. For., Victoria, BC, 389 pp.

Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar, eds. 2001. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 6: Monocotyledons (Acoraceae through Najadaceae). BC Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and BC Min. For., Victoria, BC, 361 pp.

Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar, eds. 2001. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 7: Monocotyledons (Orchidaceae through Zosteraceae). BC Min. Sustain. Res. Manage., and BC Min. For., Victoria, BC, 379 pp.

Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J.L. Penny. 2002. Rare Native Vascular Plants of British Columbia. Province of British Columbia, Victoria.

Douglas, G.W., G.B. Straley, D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar, eds. 1998. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 2: Dicotyledons (Balsaminaceae through Cuscutaceae). BC Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and BC Min. For., Victoria, BC, 401 pp.

- Douglas, G.W., G.B. Straley, D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar., eds. 1998. *Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 1: Gymnosperms and Dicotyledons (Aceraceae through Asteraceae)*. BC Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and BC Min. For., Victoria, BC, 436 pp.
- Flora of North America Editorial Committee, eds. 1993+. *Flora of North America North of Mexico*. 16+ vols. New York and Oxford.
- Government of BC. 2003. *Integrated Pest Management Act*. SBC 2003. Chapter 58. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_03058\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_03058_01). Accessed March 2013.
- Government of BC. 2004. *Community Charter Spheres of Concurrent Jurisdiction - Environment and Wildlife Regulation*, BC Reg. 144/2004 (includes amendments up to BC Reg. 235/2008, August 7, 2008). Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/03026\\_00](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/03026_00). Accessed March 2013.
- Government of BC. 2004a. *Forest and Range Practices Act, Invasive Plants Regulation*, BC Reg. 18/2004. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/18\\_18\\_2004](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/18_18_2004). Accessed March 2013.
- Government of BC. 2011. *Weed Control Act (1996); Weed Control Regulation*, BC Reg. 66/85 (includes amendments up to BC Reg. 143/2011, July 21, 2011). Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/10\\_66\\_85](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/10_66_85). Accessed March 2013.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. S.C. 2002. c29. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/S-15.3/page-1.html>. Accessed March 2013
- Iverson, K., D. Curran, T. Fleming, and A. Haney. 2008. *Sensitive Ecosystem Inventory Okanagan Valley: Vernon to Osoyoos 2000- 2007. Methods, Ecological Descriptions, Results and Conservation Tools*. Pacific and Yukon Region 2008. Canadian Wildlife Service Environmental Stewardship Branch. Technical Report Series Number 495.
- Klinkenberg, B. (Editor). 2013. *E-Flora BC: Electronic Atlas of the Plants of British Columbia*. Lab for Advanced Spatial Analysis, Department of Geography, University of British Columbia, Vancouver. Available at <http://www.geog.ubc.ca/~brian/florae/invasives.html>. Accessed February 2012 and March 2013.
- Lancaster, J. 2000. *Alberta Native Plant Council (ANPC) Guidelines for Rare Plant Surveys in Alberta*. Alberta Native Plant Council Information Bulletin, March 2000.
- Meidinger, D. and J. Pojar. 1991. *Ecosystems of British Columbia*. BC Ministry of Forests, Special Report series, ISSN 0843-6452; no. 6.

- Northwest Invasive Plant Council (NWIPC) 2012. 2012 Strategic Plan and Plant Profiles. Available at [http://nwipc.org/documents/private/2012\\_strategicplanandplantprofiles.pdf](http://nwipc.org/documents/private/2012_strategicplanandplantprofiles.pdf). Accessed March 2013.
- Penny, J and R. Klinkenberg. 2013. Protocols for Rare Vascular Plant Surveys. in B. Klinkenberg, ed. E-Flora BC: Electronic Atlas of the Plants of British Columbia [eflora.bc.ca]. Lab for Advanced Spatial Analysis, Department of Geography, University of British Columbia, Vancouver.
- Resource Inventory Committee (RIC). 1998. Standard for Upland Ecosystem Mapping in British Columbia. Province of British Columbia. Victoria, BC.
- Stevens, V., F. Backhouse, and A. Eriksson. 1995. Riparian Management in British Columbia: an important step towards maintaining biodiversity. Res. Br. BC Min For. Hab. Protect Br. BC Min Environment, Lands and Parks. Victoria, BC. Working Paper 13/1995.
- Timberline Forest Inventory Consultants Ltd. (Timberline). 2001a. Final Report for Predictive Ecosystem Mapping (PEM) of the Vanderhoof Forest District, Prince George Forest Region. Prepared for Slocan Group – Plateau Division, West Fraser Mills – Fraser Lake Sawmills Division, L&M Lumber Ltd. and Vanderhoof Forest District, British Columbia.
- Timberline Forest Inventory Consultants Ltd. (Timberline). 2001b. Predictive Ecosystem Mapping (PEM) of the Vanderhoof Forest District, Prince George Forest Region – Metadata Documentation. Prepared for Slocan Group – Plateau Division, West Fraser Mills – Fraser Lake Sawmills Division, L&M Lumber Ltd. and Vanderhoof Forest District, British Columbia.
- Tomback, D., S. Arno, and F. Keane (eds.). 2001. Whitebark pine communities: ecology and restoration. Island Press, Washington, DC. Vitt, D. 2007. Meesiaceae in Bryophyte Flora of North America, Provisional Publication Missouri Botanical Garden. Available at <http://www.mobot.org/plantscience/BFNA/bfnamenu.htm>. Accessed 2013.
- Ward, P., G. Radcliffe, J. Kirkby, J. Illingworth, and C. Cadrin. 1998. Sensitive Ecosystems Inventory: East Vancouver Island and Gulf Islands 1993 – 1997. Volume 1: Methodology, Ecological Descriptions and Results. Technical Report Series No. 320. Canadian Wildlife Service, Pacific and Yukon Region, BC.

**Section 5.1.3.4 – Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Baseline Summary**

- British Columbia Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2014. BC Species and Ecosystem Explorer. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed 2014.
- Government of Canada. 2002. Schedule 1 List of Wildlife Species at Risk. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29.

Hanson, A., Goudie, I., Lang, A., Gjerdrum, C., Cotter, R., and G. Donaldson. 2009. A Framework for the Scientific Assessment of Potential Project Impacts on Birds. Canadian Wildlife Service Technical Report Series 508. Atlantic Region. 61 pp.

Resource Inventory Standards Committee (RISC). 1999. British Columbia Wildlife Habitat Ratings Standards. Version 2.0. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Victoria, BC. 97 pp.

***Section 5.2.1 – Atmospheric and Acoustic Environment: Identification and Selection of Valued Components***

Agency. 2013. Environmental Impact Statement Guidelines. Guidelines for the Preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement for an Environmental Assessment pursuant to the Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012. Prepared for New Gold Inc. for the Blackwater Gold Project. February 2013.

Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects, 9 September 2013.

***Section 5.2.2 – Noise and Vibration***

British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Amended Quantification Methods for 2012, February 10, 2012. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/ggrcta/reporting-regulation/amendedquantificationmethods.html>. Accessed August 17, 2013.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment, British Columbia Greenhouse Gas Inventory Report 2010, June 2012, Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/ghg\\_inventory/pdf/pir-2010-full-report.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/ghg_inventory/pdf/pir-2010-full-report.pdf). Accessed August 2013.

ENC. 2004. Engineering Noise Control Design Software Version 2. Casual Systems, Rundle Mall SA, Australia

Environment Canada. 2011. SOR 2011-261. Regulations Amending the Off-Road Compression-Ignition Engine Emission Regulations. November 17, 2011. Available at <http://www.gazette.gc.ca/rp-pr/p2/2011/2011-12-07/pdf/g2-14525.pdf>. Accessed August 12, 2013.

Environment Canada. 2013. National Inventory Report 1990-2011: Greenhouse Gas Sources and Sinks in Canada - Executive Summary. Greenhouse Gas Division. Gatineau, Quebec. Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/Publications/A07ADAA2-E349-481A-860F-9E2064F34822%5CNationalInventoryReportGreenhouseGasSourcesAndSinksInCanada19902011.pdf>. Accessed August 2013.

- Government of BC. 2009. BC Reg. 272/2009, 603/2009. Greenhouse Gas Reduction (Cap and Trade) Act. Reporting Regulation.
- Government of Canada. 2009. Explosives Regulations C.R.C., c. 599. Published by the Minister of Justice. Available at [http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/PDF/C.R.C.,\\_c.\\_599.pdf](http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/PDF/C.R.C.,_c._599.pdf). Accessed August 2013.
- Government of Canada. 2010. Heavy-duty Vehicle and Engine Greenhouse Gas Emission Regulations SOR/2013-24 February 22, 2013, Canadian Environmental Protection Act, 1999
- Government of Canada. 2010. Passenger Automobile and Light Truck Greenhouse Gas Emission Regulations, Vol. 144, No. 21 — October 13, 2010, Registration, SOR/2010-201 September 23, 2010, Canadian Environmental Protection Act, 1999
- Health Canada. 2010. Useful Information for Environmental Assessments. Available at [http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/ewh-semt/pubs/eval/environ\\_assess-eval/index-eng.php](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/ewh-semt/pubs/eval/environ_assess-eval/index-eng.php)
- United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA). 1995. AP 42, Fifth Edition Compilation of Air Pollutant Emission Factors, Volume 1: Stationary Point and Area Sources, Available at <http://www.epa.gov/ttn/chief/ap42/>. Accessed June 2013.
- World Meteorological Organization (WMO). 2007. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press. New York, New York. Available at [http://www.ipcc.ch/publications\\_and\\_data/ar4/wg1/en/contents.html](http://www.ipcc.ch/publications_and_data/ar4/wg1/en/contents.html). Accessed July 2013.

### **Section 5.2.3 – Climate Change**

- AMEC Americas Limited, New Gold Inc. Blackwater Project British Columbia. Preliminary Economic Assessment Report, 20 September 2012. Accessed June 2013.
- BC MOE. 2012. British Columbia Greenhouse Gas Inventory Report 2010. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/ghg\\_inventory/pdf/pir-2010-full-report.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/ghg_inventory/pdf/pir-2010-full-report.pdf). Accessed August 2013.
- BC MOE. 2013. 2013 B.C. Best Practices Methodology for Quantifying Greenhouse Gas Emissions. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/pdfs/BC-Best-Practices-Methodology-for-Quantifying-Greenhouse-Gas-Emissions.pdf>. Accessed: January 2013.
- CO<sub>2</sub>Now.org, <http://co2now.org/Current-CO2/CO2-Now/global-carbon-emissions.html>; Accessed September 2014



- EC. 2013. National Inventory Report 1990-2011: Greenhouse Gas Sources and Sinks in Canada - Executive Summary. Greenhouse Gas Division. Gatineau, Quebec. Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/Publications/A07ADAA2-E349-481A-860F-9E2064F34822/NationalInventoryReportGreenhouseGasSourcesAndSinksInCanada19902011.pdf>. Accessed August 2013.
- Environment Canada (EC). 2011. SOR 2011-261. Regulations Amending the Off-Road Compression-Ignition Engine Emission Regulations. Available at <http://www.gazette.gc.ca/rp-pr/p2/2011/2011-12-07/pdf/g2-14525.pdf>. Accessed August 2013.
- Government of British Columbia. 2009. BC Reg. 272/2009, 603/2009. *Greenhouse Gas Reduction (Cap and Trade) Act*. Reporting Regulation.
- Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). 2006. *2006 IPCC Guidelines for National Greenhouse Gas Inventories*. Institute for Global Environmental Strategies. Hayama, Japan
- Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). 2010. 2006 IPCC Guidelines for National Greenhouse Gas Inventories Vol 2. Energy. Chapter 3: Mobile Combustion. Available at [http://www.ipcc-nggip.iges.or.jp/public/2006gl/pdf/2\\_Volume2/V2\\_3\\_Ch3\\_Mobile\\_Combustion.pdf](http://www.ipcc-nggip.iges.or.jp/public/2006gl/pdf/2_Volume2/V2_3_Ch3_Mobile_Combustion.pdf). Accessed January 2013.
- United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA). 1995. AP 42, Fifth Edition Compilation of Air Pollutant Emission Factors, Volume 1: Stationary Point and Area Sources, Available at <http://www.epa.gov/ttn/chief/ap42/>. Accessed June 2013.
- US EPA. 2000. AP42, Fifth Edition. Compilation of Air Pollutant Emission Factors, Volume 1: Solid Waste Disposal. Chapter 2.1: Refuse Combustion. Available at <http://www.epa.gov/ttnchie1/ap42/ch02/final/c02s01.pdf>. Accessed January 2013.
- US EPA. 2010. Motor Vehicle Emission Simulator (MOVES2010b). Available at <http://www.epa.gov/otaq/models/moves/>. Accessed: January 2013.
- World Meteorological Organization (WMO). 2007. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press. New York, New York. Available at [http://www.ipcc.ch/publications\\_and\\_data/ar4/wg1/en/contents.html](http://www.ipcc.ch/publications_and_data/ar4/wg1/en/contents.html). Accessed July 2013.

#### **Section 5.2.4 – Air Quality**

- BC EAO, 2013, Guideline For The Selection Of Valued Components And Assessment Of Potential Effects.

BC MOE. 2012a. Amended Quantification Methods for 2012. Available at:

<http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/ggrcta/reporting-regulation/amendedquantificationmethods.html>. Accessed 17 August 2013.

BC MOE. 2012b. British Columbia Greenhouse Gas Inventory Report 2010, Available at:

[http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/ghg\\_inventory/pdf/pir-2010-full-report.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cas/mitigation/ghg_inventory/pdf/pir-2010-full-report.pdf). Accessed August 2013.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 2008. Guidelines for Air Quality Dispersion Modelling in British Columbia. Environmental Protection Division, Environmental Quality Branch, Air Protection Section. Victoria, B.C.

Environment Canada (EC). 2011. SOR 2011-261. Regulations Amending the Off-Road

Compression-Ignition Engine Emission Regulations. November 17, 2011. Available at: <http://www.gazette.gc.ca/rp-pr/p2/2011/2011-12-07/pdf/g2-14525.pdf>. Accessed 12 August 2013.

United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA). 1995. AP 42, Fifth Edition

Compilation of Air Pollutant Emission Factors, Volume 1: Stationary Point and Area Sources, Available at <http://www.epa.gov/ttn/chief/ap42/>. Accessed June 2013.

### **Section 5.3.1 – Aquatic Environment: Identification and Selection of Valued Components**

Agency. 2013. Environmental Impact Statement Guidelines. Guidelines for the Preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement for an Environmental Assessment pursuant to the Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012. Prepared for New Gold Inc. for the Blackwater Gold Project. February 2013.

COSEWIC (Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada). 2003. COSEWIC assessment and update status report on the white sturgeon *Acipenser transmontanus* in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada. Ottawa. vii + 51 pp. ([www.sararegistry.gc.ca/status/status\\_e.cfm](http://www.sararegistry.gc.ca/status/status_e.cfm)).

Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects, 9 September 2013.

Government of Canada. 2002. *Species At Risk Act*. SC 2002.

Griffiths, D. 1997. Local and regional fish species richness in North American lacustrine fish. *Journal of Animal Ecology* 66: 49-56.

LM Forest Resource Solutions Ltd. 2011. Vanderhoof ecosystem restoration strategic plan. Prepared for the Vanderhoof Ecosystem Restoration Steering Committee.

Ptolemy, J. and R. Vennesland. 2003. Update COSEWIC status report on the white sturgeon *Acipenser transmontanus* in Canada, in COSEWIC assessment and update status report on the white sturgeon, *Acipenser transmontanus*, in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). Ottawa. 1-51 pp.

Species conservation status reports for BMI and fish (BC CDC, 2013, 2014; COSEWIC, 2013)

### **Section 5.3.2 – Surface Water Flow**

British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. 2013. Interview.

British Columbia Ministry of the Environment. 2009. Manual of British Columbia Hydrometric Standards. Version 1.0.

Environment Canada (2009). Environmental Code of Practice for Metal Mines. Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/lcpe-cepa/default.asp?lang=En&n=CBE3CD59-1>. Accessed February 2014.

Government of BC. 1997. *Fish Protection Act*. Bill 25 – 1997. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/habitat/fish\\_protection\\_act/act/documents/act-theact.html](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/habitat/fish_protection_act/act/documents/act-theact.html). Accessed February 2014.

Government of British Columbia (BC). 1996. *Water Protection Act*. RSBC 1996, chapter 484. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96484\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96484_01). Accessed February 2014.

Government of Canada. 2013. *Fisheries Act*. Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985, c. F-14. Available at <http://laws.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/F-14/FullText.html>. Accessed January 2014.

Knight Piésold. 2012. Blackwater Gold Project – Preliminary Winter Low Flow Summary Letter (VA12-01922). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 20 December 2012.

Knight Piésold. 2013a. Blackwater Gold Project – Fresh Water Supply System Design (VA101-457/6-A.01VA13-01189). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 17 July 2013.

Knight Piésold. 2013b. Blackwater Gold Project – Revised Baseline Tatelkuz Lake Levels Letter (VA13-1604). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 22 July 2013.

Knight Piésold. 2013c. Blackwater Gold Project – Feasibility Study Water Balance Model (VA13-02400). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 23 December 2013.

Knight Piésold. 2013d. Blackwater Gold Project – Watershed Modelling Report (VA101-457/6-6, Revision 1). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 17 January 2014.

- Knight Piésold. 2013e. Blackwater Gold Project – Mine Waste and Water Management Design Report. (VA101-457/6-11, Revision 0). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 04 December 2013.
- Knight Piésold. 2013f. Blackwater Gold Project – 2013 Hydrometeorology Report (VA101-457/6-12, Revision 0). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 04 November 2013.
- Knight Piésold. 2013g. Email discussion with Knight Piésold, 07 August 2013.
- Knight Piésold. 2013h. Email discussion with Knight Piésold, 08 October 2013.
- Knight Piésold. 2013i. Blackwater Gold Project – Tatelkuz Lake IFN Withdrawal Model Letter (VA13-02066). Prepared for New Gold Inc. 22 November 2013.
- Knight Piésold, 2014. Tatelkuz Lake Levels for Mine Life Scenarios – Revised. Letter Memo prepared for New Gold Inc. January 2014
- Knight Piésold. 2015. Personal communication. Email dated 12 January 2015.
- Lewis, A., T. Hatfield, B. Chilibeck and C. Roberts (2004). Assessment methods for aquatic habitat and instream flow characteristics in support of applications to dam, divert or extract water from stream in British Columbia. Prepared for BC Ministry of Water, Land & Air Protection and BC Ministry of Sustainable Resource Development. March 2004.
- Lhoosk'uz Dene Elders. 2013. Interview. Prince George, BC, Canada.
- Tatelkuz Lake Ranch Resort. 2012. Interview. Prince George BC, Canada.

### ***Section 5.3.3 – Surface Water Quality***

- BC MOE 2012a. Water and Air Baseline Monitoring Guidance Document for Mine Proponents and Operators.
- BC MOE. 2006a. A Compendium of Working Water Quality Guidelines for British Columbia.
- BC MOE. 2006b. British Columbia Approved Water Quality Guidelines. Available at [www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq). Accessed 2013.
- BC MOE. 2008. Ambient aquatic life guidelines for iron.
- BC MOE. 2009. Water quality guidelines for nitrogen (nitrate, nitrite, and ammonia).
- BC MOE. 2012b. Draft Ambient Water Quality Guidelines for Sulphate.
- British Columbia Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 2001. Water Quality Guidelines for Temperature.

- Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment (CCME). 2007. Environmental Quality Guidelines.
- Ferguson, K.D., and Leask, S.M. 1988. The Export of Nutrients from Surface Coal Mines. Environment Canada Regional Report 87-12.
- Helsel, D.R. (2012). Statistics for Censored Environmental Data using Minitab and R, 2nd edition. John Wiley & Sons, USA, New Jersey.
- Jambor J.L., Martin A.J., Gerits J. 2009. The post-depositional accumulation of metal-rich cyanide phases in submerged tailings deposits. Appl. Geochem. 24:2256-2265.
- Kadlec, R.H., and R.L. Knight. 1996. Treatment Wetlands. CRC Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton.
- Lorax. 2012. Cadmium Site Performance Objective for Davidson Creek (Blackwater Gold Project). Technical memorandum prepared for New Gold by Lorax Environmental Ltd., 26 November 2012.
- Smith A.C.S., Mudder, T.I. 1991. The Chemistry and Treatment of Cyanidation Wastes, Mining Journal Books, London, United Kingdom.

**Section 5.3.4 – Sediment Quality**

- BC MOE. 2013. BC Water Resources Atlas. Available at <http://webmaps.gov.bc.ca/imf5/imf.jsp?site=wrbc>. Accessed April 2014.
- British Columbia Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources (BC MEMPR). 2008. Health, Safety and Reclamation Code of Mines in British Columbia. Victoria, BC.
- British Columbia Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 2012. Water and Air Baseline Monitoring Guidance Document for Mine Proponents and Operators, Prepared by the Ministry of Environment, October 9, 2012.
- Government of BC. 1996a. *Contaminated Sites Regulation*. BC Reg. 375/96.
- Government of BC. 1996b. *Environment and Land Use Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 117.
- Government of BC. 1996c. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 293.
- Government of BC. 1996d. *Water Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 483.
- Government of BC. 1997. *Fish Protection Act*. SBC 1997. c. 21.
- Government of BC. 2002. *Environmental Assessment Act*. SBC 2002, c. 43.
- Government of BC. 2003. *Environmental Management Act*. SBC 2003. c. 53.

- Government of BC. 2004a. *Ground Water Protection Regulation*. BC Reg. 299/2004.
- Government of BC. 2004b. *Waste Discharge Regulation*. BC Reg. 320/2004.
- Government of British Columbia (BC). 1988. *Hazardous Waste Regulation*. BC Reg. 63/88.
- Government of Canada. 1985. *Fisheries Act*. RSC 1985, c. F-14.
- Government of Canada. 1999. *Canadian Environmental Protection Act, 1999*. SC 1999, c. 33.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29.
- Government of Canada. 2012. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. SC 2012, c. 52.
- Western Water Associates Ltd. September 2013. *Water Supply Feasibility – Well Drilling and Completion Report, Blackwater Mine Construction Camp Test Wells*, Western Water Associates.

***Personal Communications***

- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2013. Interviews with representatives.
- Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation and Saik'uz First Nation. 2013. Interviews with representatives and Elders.

***Section 5.3.5 – Groundwater Flow***

- BC MOE. 2012. *Water and Air Baseline Monitoring Guidance Document for Mine Proponents and Operators*.
- British Columbia Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 2006. *A Compendium of Working Water Quality Guidelines for British Columbia*.
- Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment (CCME). 2007. *Environmental Quality Guidelines*.

***Section 5.3.6 – Groundwater Quality***

- AMEC. 2013. *Geochemical Characterization Report*. AMEC, May 2013.
- BC Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources. 2008. *Health, Safety and Reclamation Code of Mines in British Columbia*.



British Columbia Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 2012. Water and Air Baseline Monitoring Guidance Document for Mine Proponents and Operators. Prepared by the Ministry of Environment, October 9, 2012.

Government of BC. 1996a. Contaminated Sites Regulation. BC Reg. 375/96.

Government of BC. 1996b. *Environment and Land Use Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 117.

Government of BC. 1996c. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 293.

Government of BC. 1996d. *Water Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 483.

Government of BC. 2002. *Environmental Assessment Act*. SBC 2002, c. 43.

Government of BC. 2003. *Environmental Management Act*. SBC 2003, c. 53.

Government of BC. 2004a. Ground Water Protection Regulation. BC Reg. 299/2004.

Government of BC. 2004b. Waste Discharge Regulation. BC Reg. 320/2004.

Government of BC. 2007. *Fish Protection Act*. SBC 1997. c. 21.

Government of British Columbia (BC). 1988. Hazardous Waste Regulation. BC Reg. 63/88.

Government of Canada. 1985. *Fisheries Act*. RSC 1985, c. F-14.

Government of Canada. 1992. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. SC 2012. c. 52.

Government of Canada. 1999. *Canadian Environmental Protection Act, 1999*. SC 1999. c. 33.

Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002. c. 29.

Lorax. 2013a. Metal Sorption Potential of Natural Substrates Underlying the Blackwater Tailings Storage Facility: Implications for Attenuation along Seepage Flowpaths, A302-4.

Lorax. 2013b. Blackwater Gold Project: Conceptual Model for Contaminant Transport and Behaviour in Tailings Storage Facility, A302-3.

Western Water Associates Ltd. 2013. Feasibility – Environmental Impact Study: Rapid Infiltration Basin Wastewater Disposal for the New Gold Inc. Blackwater Mine Construction Camp, near Vanderhoof, B.C., Western Water Associates.

### **Section 5.3.7 – Wetlands**

AMEC (2013). Blackwater Gold Project–Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Baseline Report. Prepared for New Gold Inc. Burnaby, BC.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- AMEC. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project–Wetlands: 2011-2013 Baseline Report. Prepared for New Gold Inc., Burnaby, BC.
- Barbier, Edward B. 2011. Wetlands as natural assets. Hydrological Sciences Journal–Journal des Sciences Hydrologiques, 56(8), Special issue: Ecosystem Services of Wetlands.
- BC Environmental Effects Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects. Available at [http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO\\_Valued\\_Components\\_Guideline\\_2013\\_09\\_09.pdf](http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO_Valued_Components_Guideline_2013_09_09.pdf) Accessed October 2013.
- BC MELP (British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Land and Parks. 1991. British Columbia Specifications and Guidelines for Geomatics. TRIM. Content Series Vol. 4. Release 2.0. Province of British Columbia
- BC MFLNRO (British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations). 2012. British Columbia plant species codes and selected attributes: Version 7.
- BC MOE (British Columbia Ministry of Environment). 2006. British Columbia Approved Water Quality Guidelines. Available at [www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wat/wq). Accessed January 2013.
- BC MOE. 2008. Ambient Aquatic Life Guidelines for Iron. Victoria, BC.
- BC MOE. 2009. Wetland Ways: Interim Guidelines for Wetland Protection and Conservation in British Columbia. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/wetlandways2009/wetlandways\\_docintro.html](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/wetlandways2009/wetlandways_docintro.html). Accessed 2013. p. 1-11.
- BC MOE. 2012. Procedures for Mitigating Impacts on Environmental Values–Final Working Draft. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/emop/docs/EMProceduresFinalWorkingDraft.pdf>. Accessed September 2013.
- BC MOE. 2012. Water and Air Baseline Monitoring Guidance Document for Mine Proponents and Operators. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/epd/industrial/mining/guidance\\_agree.htm](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/epd/industrial/mining/guidance_agree.htm); Accessed November 2012.
- BC MOE. 2013. BC Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC) – Species and Ecosystems at Risk in BC. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/atrisk/>. Accessed October 2013.
- Bond, W.K., K.W. Cox, T. Heberlein, E.W. Manning, et al. 1992. Wetland Evaluation Guide. Issues Paper No. 1992-1. North American Wetlands Conservation Council. Environment Canada and Canadian Wildlife Service: Ottawa, ON.

- Cox, R. and J. Cullington. 2009. Wetland Ways: Interim Guidelines for Wetland Protection and Conservation in British Columbia. Wetland Stewardship Partnership. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/wetlandways2009/Wetland%20Ways%20Ch%206%20Mining.pdf>. Accessed September 2013.
- Environment Canada (EC). 2013. Bird Conservation Strategy for Bird Conservation Region 10–Pacific and Yukon Region: Northern Rockies. Canadian Wildlife Service, Environment Canada. Delta, BC.
- Environmental Law Institute. 2008. Planner’s Guide to Wetland Buffers for Local Governments. ELI Project No. 0627-01. Environmental Law Institute: Washington DC.
- Government of BC. 2002. *Forest and Range Practices Act*. SBC 2002 c. 69.
- Government of BC. 2012. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. RSBC 2012, c. 37.
- Government of British Columbia (BC). 1996. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996 c. 293.
- Government of Canada. 1991. *The Federal Policy on Wetland Conservation*. Environment Canada. Ottawa, ON.
- Government of Canada. 1994. *Migratory Birds Convention Act*. SC 1994, c. 22.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Metal Mining Effluent Regulations*. SOR/2002-222.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. S.C. 2002. c. 29.
- Government of Canada. 2013. *Fisheries Act*. Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985 c. F-14.
- Hamaguchi, B.A., H.M. Larratt, & M. Freberg. 2008. The development of an aquatic ecosystem in Trojan Tailings Pond, Highland Valley Copper. British Columbia Mine Reclamation Symposium. University of British Columbia. Available at <https://circle.ubc.ca/handle/2429/8290>. Accessed October 2013.
- Hanson, L. Swanson, D. Ewing, G. Grabas, S. Meyer, L. Ross, M. Watmough, and J. Kirkby (2008). Wetland ecological functions assessment: and overview of approaches. A. Atlantic Region. Technical Report Series Number 497. Available at [http://www.wetkit.net/docs/WA\\_TechReport497\\_en.pdf](http://www.wetkit.net/docs/WA_TechReport497_en.pdf). Accessed 2013.
- Hatler, D.F., D. Blood, & A. Beal. 2003. Furbearer management guidelines–muskrat. FNLRO–Fish and Wildlife Division. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/trapping/#Management>. Accessed October 2013.
- Hruby, T. 2013. *Update on Wetland Buffers: The State of the Science–Draft*, August 2013. Washington State Department of Ecology Publication #13-06-11. Olympia, WA.

- Lynch-Stewart, P., P. Neice, C. Rubric, and I. Kessel-Taylor. 1996. *The Federal Policy on Wetland Conservation. Implementation Guide for Federal Land Managers*. Canadian Wildlife Service. Environment Canada. Ottawa, ON.
- MacKenzie, W.H. and J.R. Moran (2004). *Wetlands of British Columbia. A Guide to Identification*. Land Management Handbook No. 52. Res. Br., B.C. Ministry of Forests, Victoria, BC.
- Milko, R. 1998. *Wetlands environmental assessment guideline*. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa, ON.
- Mitsch, W. and J. Gosselink. 2007. *Wetlands—Fourth Edition*. Hoboken, New Jersey, USA: John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
- National Wetlands Working Group (NWWG). 1988. *Wetlands of Canada. Ecological Land Classification Series, No. 24*. Environment Canada and Polyscience Publications Inc. Ottawa, Ontario. p 452.
- National Wetlands Working Group (NWWG). 1997. *The Canadian Wetland Classification System, Second Edition*. Ed Warner, B.G. and CDA Rubec. Wetland Research Centre, U. of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON.
- Pojar, J., K. Klinka, and D. Meidinger. 1987. *Biogeoclimatic ecosystem classification in British Columbia*. *For. Ecol. Manage.* 22: 119-154.
- RIC (Resource Inventory Committee). 1998 *Standard for Terrestrial Ecosystem Mapping in British Columbia*. Available at <http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/risc/pubs/teecolo/tem/indextem.htm>. Accessed 2 March 2013.
- Rubec, C. and P. Lynch-Stewart. 1998. *Regulatory and Non-Regulatory Approaches for Wetland Conservation in Canada*. Canadian Wildlife Service. Environment Canada. Ottawa, ON.
- US Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). *EPA and Hardrock Mining: A Source Book for Industry in the Northwest and Alaska—Appendix A: Hydrology*. USEPA Region 10: Seattle, WA.
- Wardrop, D. H., Amy Glasmeier, Jessica Peterson-Smith, Diane Eckles, et al. 2011 *Wetland ecosystem services and coupled socioeconomic benefits through conservation practices in the Appalachian region*. *Ecological Applications*, 21(3), 93-115.
- Warner, B.G., and C.D.A Rubec (editors). 1997. *The Canadian Wetland Classification System: The National Wetlands Working Group*. Wetlands Research Centre. University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON.
- Welsch, D., D. Smart, J. Boyer, P. Minken, H. Smith, and T. McCandless. 1995. *Forested Wetlands—Functions, Benefits, and the Use of Best Management Practices*. NA-PR-01-

95. US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northern Area State and Private Forestry. Radnor, PA.

**Section 5.3.8 – Fish**

- Azimuth. 2012. Site C Clean Energy Project. Volume 2, Appendix J, Mercury Technical Reports, Part 1 Mercury Technical Synthesis Report. Prepared by Azimuth Consulting Group Partnership, Vancouver, for BC Hydro Power and Authority.
- BC CDC. 2013. Conservation Status Report: *Hybognathus hankinsoni*. British Columbia Ministry of Environment. Available at: <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>.
- BC CDC. 2014. Conservation Status Report: *Acroloxus coloradensis*. British Columbia Ministry of Environment. Available at: <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>.
- BC Hydro, BC Transmission Corporation, Fisheries and Oceans Canada, and the Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection. 2003. Approved work practices for managing riparian vegetation. Vancouver, BC. Available at [http://www.bchydro.com/content/dam/hydro/medialib/internet/documents/bctc\\_documents/work\\_practices\\_riparian.pdf](http://www.bchydro.com/content/dam/hydro/medialib/internet/documents/bctc_documents/work_practices_riparian.pdf). Accessed 27 November 2013.
- BC MOE (British Columbia Ministry of Environment). 2004. Region 7 Omineca – reduced risk timing windows for fish and wildlife. Standards and Best Practices for Instream Works Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection, Omineca Region Ecosystem Environmental Stewardship Division, Prince George, BC, April 2004.
- BC MOF (British Columbia Ministry of Forests). 1995. Riparian management area guidebook. Forest Practice Code of British Columbia. Province of British Columbia. Victoria, BC. 68pp.
- BC MOF. 2012. Fish-stream crossing guidebook. Forest Practices Code of British Columbia guidebook. Province of British Columbia. Victoria, BC.
- Bradbury, C., A.S. Power and M.M. Roberge. 2001. Standard methods guide for the classification/quantification of lacustrine habitat in Newfoundland and Labrador. Fisheries and Oceans, St. John's. NF. 60 p.
- Burns, J.F. 1977. A reconnaissance survey of Kuyakuz Lake 01689LNRS. Report ID: 28864. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/acat/public/welcome.do>. Accessed 2012.
- Bussanich, R., B. Murray, and R. Bocking. 2005. Assessment of fish population and lakeshore spawning habitat in Coquitlam Reservoir – Year 1: Studies to address fish population and reservoir ecology, 2004. BCRP Report No. 04.Co.03.

- Connors, B.M., D.R. Marmorek, E. Olson, A.W. Hall, P. de la Cueva Bueno, A. Bensen, K. Bryan, C. Perrin, E. Parkinson, D. Abraham, C. Alexander, C. Murray, R. Smith, L. Grieg, and G. Farrell. 2014. Independent review of run-of-river hydroelectric projects and their impacts on salmonid species in British Columbia. Prepared for Clean Energy BC by ESSA Technologies Ltd., Limnotek Research and Development Ltd., and Water Smith Research. Available at: [http://www.psf.ca/files/2014/ROR\\_Report.pdf](http://www.psf.ca/files/2014/ROR_Report.pdf).
- Coombes, D.M.V. 1985a. A reconnaissance survey of Laidman Lake 01815UEUT. Report ID: 28859. Fisheries Branch, BC Ministry of Environment. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/acat/public/welcome.do>. Accessed 2012.
- Coombes, D.M.V. 1985b. A reconnaissance survey of Top Lake 01045UEUT. Report ID: 28866. Fisheries Branch, BC Ministry of Environment. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/acat/public/welcome.do>. Accessed 2012.
- COSEWIC (Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada). 2013. Wildlife species assessments. November 2012. Available at [http://www.cosepac.gc.ca/eng/sct0/index\\_e.cfm](http://www.cosepac.gc.ca/eng/sct0/index_e.cfm). Accessed 2012.
- Depew, D.C., N.M. Burgess, M.R. Anderson, R. Baker, S.P. Bhavsar, R.A. Bodaly, C.S. Eckley, M.S. Evans, N. Gantner, J.A. Graydon, K. Jacobs, J.E. LeBlanc, V.L. St. Louis, and L.M. Campbell. 2013. An overview of mercury concentrations in freshwater fish species: a national fish mercury dataset for Canada. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 70: 436-451.
- DFO. 1995. Freshwater intake end-of-pipe fish screen guideline. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/library/223669.pdf>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 1998a. Habitat conservation and protection guidelines, 2nd edition. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, 19 pp.
- DFO. 1998b. Guidelines for the use of explosives in or near Canadian fisheries waters. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, Ontario.
- DFO. 2010a. Pathways of Effects – Fish passage issues. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010b. Pathways of Effects – Placement of materials or structures in water. Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2010c. Pathways of Effects – Change in timing, duration and frequency of flows. Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/frequency-frequence-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.



- DFO. 2010d. Pathways of Effects – Use of explosives. Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/frequency-frequence-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2010e. Pathways of Effects – Vegetation Clearing. Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2010f. Pathways of Effects – Grading. Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2010g. Pathways of Effects- Excavation. Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010h. Pathways of Effects – Use of industrial equipment. Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2010i. Pathways of Effects – Cleaning or maintenance of bridges or other structures. Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed 2013.
- DFO. 2013a. Measures to avoid causing harm to fish and fish habitat. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/measures-mesures/index-eng.html> Accessed 19 December 2013.
- DFO. 2013b. Fisheries protection policy statement. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, 29 October 2013. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pol/index-eng.html> Accessed 2013.
- EC (Environment Canada). 2011. 2011 Metal Mining Environmental Effects Monitoring (EEM) Technical Guidance Document. Environment Canada, National Environmental Effects Monitoring Office. Ottawa, ON.
- Government of British Columbia. 1997. *Fish Protection Act*. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/habitat/fish\\_protection\\_act/](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/habitat/fish_protection_act/). Accessed 2013.
- Government of British Columbia. 2002. *Forest and Range Practices Act*. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/code/>. Accessed 2013.
- Government of British Columbia. 2004. *Water Act*. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wsd/water\\_rights/licence\\_application/section9/](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wsd/water_rights/licence_application/section9/). Accessed 2013.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. Statutes of Canada, 2002, c.29. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/s-15.3/>. Accessed 2013.

- Government of Canada. 2012. *Metal Mining Effluent Regulations*. Statutory Orders and Regulations (SOR/2002–222). Available at: <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/regulations/SOR-2002-222>. Accessed 2013.
- Government of Canada. 2013. *Fisheries Act*. Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985 c. F-14. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/F-14/FullText.html>. Accessed 2013.
- Griffiths, D. 1997. Local and regional fish species richness in North American lacustrine fish. *Journal of Animal Ecology* 66: 49-56.
- Interviews with Lhoosk'uz Dene Elders. 2013. Interview with LDN elders. Prince George, BC, Canada. July 2013.
- Keeley, E.R., P.A. Slaney, and D. Zaldokas. 1996. Estimates of production benefits for salmonid fishes from stream restoration initiatives. Province of British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks and Ministry of Forests. Watershed Restoration Management Report No. 4.
- Klinkenberg, B. (Editor). 2012. *E-Fauna BC: Electronic Atlas of the Fauna of British Columbia* [efauna.bc.ca]. Lab for Advanced Spatial Analysis, Department of Geography, University of British Columbia, Vancouver. Accessed at: <http://linnet.geog.ubc.ca/efauna/Atlas/Atlas.aspx?sciname=Acroloxus coloradensis&ilifeform=190>.
- Knight Piésold. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project – Fresh Water Supply System Design. Report No. VA101-457/6-A.01. Prepared for New Gold Inc. by Knight Piésold Consultants Ltd. 17 July 2013.
- Koning, C.D., and E.R. Keeley. 1997. Salmonid biostandards for estimating production benefits of fish habitat restoration procedures. Chapter 3 in P.A. Slaney and D. Zaldokas (ed.) *Fish habitat rehabilitation procedures*. Watershed Restoration Technical Circular No. 9.
- Lewis, A., T. Hatfield, B. Chilibeck and C. Roberts. 2013. Assessment methods for aquatic habitat and instream flow characteristics in support of applications to dam, divert, or extract water from streams in British Columbia. Report prepared for the BC Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection and the Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. Available at: [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/assessment\\_methods\\_instreamflow\\_in\\_bc.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/assessment_methods_instreamflow_in_bc.pdf). Accessed 11 June 2012.
- Lloyd, D.S., J.P. Koenings, and J.D. LaPerriere. 1987. Effects of turbidity in fresh waters of Alaska. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 7: 18-33.
- Maiolie, M. A., G. P. Schoby, W. J. Ament, and W. Harryman. 2008. Lake Pend Oreille 2006 kokanee and rainbow trout research efforts. Idaho Department of Fish and Game Report Number 08-06.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- McPhail, J.D. 2007. The Freshwater Fishes of British Columbia. The University of Alberta Press.
- New Gold. 2012. Blackwater Gold Project: Project Description. Prepared for New Gold Inc. by AMEC Environment and Infrastructure. October 2012.
- Newcombe, C.P. 1994. Suspended sediments in aquatic ecosystems: Ill effects as a function of concentration and duration of exposure. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks, Habitat Protection Branch, Victoria, BC.
- Nowosad, D.M., and E.B. Taylor. 2013. Habitat variation and invasive species as factors influencing the distribution of native fishes in the lower Fraser River Valley, British Columbia, with an emphasis on brassy minnow (*Hybognathus hankinsoni*). Canadian Journal of Zoology 91: 71-81.
- Rieberger, K. 1992. Metal concentrations in fish tissue from uncontaminated B.C. lakes. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Water Quality Section. August 1992.
- Roberge, M., T. Slaney, and C.K. Minns. 2001. Life history characteristics of freshwater fishes occurring in British Columbia, with major emphasis on lake habitat characteristics. Canadian Manuscript Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 2574:189 pp.
- Schindler, E.U., D. Sebastian, G.F. Andrusak, H. Andrusak, L. Vidmanic, J. Stockner, F. Pick, L.M. Ley, P.B. Hamilton, M. Bassett, and K.I. Ashley. 2009. The 2006 Kootenay Lake fertilization experiment, year 15 (north arm) and year 3 (south arm). British Columbia Ministry of Environment Fisheries Project Report No. RD 126.
- Schoby, G P., N.C. Wahl, A.M. Dux, W.J. Ament, and W. Harryman. 2009. Lake Pend Oreille 2007 kokanee and rainbow trout research efforts. Idaho Department of Fish and Game Report Number 09-08.
- Singleton, H.J., 1985. Water quality criteria for particulate matter: Technical appendix. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks, Victoria, BC.
- Stables, T.B., and C.J. Perrin. 2010. Abundance and biomass of fish in Stave Reservoir in October 2009. Report prepared for BC Hydro by Limnotek Research and Development Inc. and Shuksan Fisheries Consulting. 58p.
- Stark, E.J. 2006. Dworshak kokanee population and entrainment assessment, 2005 Annual Report. Idaho Department of Fish and Game Report Number 06-37.
- Wahl, N.C., A.M. Dux, W.J. Ament, and W. Harryman. 2010. Lake Pend Oreille 2008 kokanee and rainbow trout research efforts. Idaho Department of Fish and Game Report Number 10-02.

### **Section 5.3.9 – Fish Habitat**

- Azimuth. 2012. Site C Clean Energy Project. Volume 2, Appendix J, Mercury Technical Reports, Part 1 Mercury Technical Synthesis Report. Prepared by Azimuth Consulting Group Partnership, Vancouver, for BC Hydro Power and Authority.
- BC CDC (BC Conservation Data Centre). 2014. Conservation Status Report: *Acroloxus coloradensis*. British Columbia Ministry of Environment. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed 2014.
- BC Hydro, British Columbia Transmission Corporation, Fisheries and Oceans Canada, and the Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection. 2003. Approved Work Practices for Managing Riparian Vegetation. Vancouver, BC. Available at [http://www.bchydro.com/content/dam/hydro/medialib/internet/documents/bctc\\_documents/work\\_practices\\_riparian.pdf](http://www.bchydro.com/content/dam/hydro/medialib/internet/documents/bctc_documents/work_practices_riparian.pdf). Accessed 2014.
- BC MOE (British Columbia Ministry of Environment. 2004. Region 7 Omineca – Reduced Risk Timing Windows for Fish and Wildlife. Standards and Best Practices for Instream Works Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection, Omineca Region Ecosystem Environmental Stewardship Division, Prince George, BC, April 2004.
- BC MOF. 2012. Fish-stream crossing guidebook. Forest Practices Code of British Columbia guidebook. Province of British Columbia. Victoria, BC.
- Bovee, K. 1982. A guide to stream habitat analysis using the Instream Flow Incremental Methodology. Instream Flow Information Paper 12, United States Fish and Wildlife Service FWS/OBS- 82/26.
- Bovee, K.D., B.L. Lamb, J.M. Bartholow, C.B. Stalnaker, J. Taylor, and J. Henriksen. 1998. Stream habitat analysis using the instream flow incremental methodology: U.S. Geological Survey Information and Technology Report 1998-0004.
- Bustard, D.R., and D.W. Narver. 1975. Aspects of the winter ecology of juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) and steelhead trout (*Salmo gairdneri*). Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 32: 667-680.
- CABIN (Canadian Aquatic Biomonitoring Network). 2011. CABIN Resources. Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/rcba-cabin/default.asp?lang=En&n=74876ADD-1>. Accessed 2012.
- CABIN. 2012. CABIN Database. Available at [http://cabin.cciw.ca/Application/birc\\_login.asp?Lang=en-ca](http://cabin.cciw.ca/Application/birc_login.asp?Lang=en-ca). Accessed 2012.
- Clarke, K.R., and R.M. Warwick. 2001. Change in marine communities: an approach to statistical analysis and interpretation. Second edition. PRIMER-E: Plymouth, UK.

- Connors, B.M., D.R. Marmorek, E. Olson, A.W. Hall, P. de la Cueva Bueno, A. Bensen, K. Bryan, C. Perrin, E. Parkinson, D. Abraham, C. Alexander, C. Murray, R. Smith, L. Grieg, and G. Farrell. 2014. Independent review of run-of-river hydroelectric projects and their impacts on salmonid species in British Columbia. Prepared for Clean Energy BC by ESSA Technologies Ltd., Limnotek Research and Development Ltd., and Water Smith Research. Available at: [http://www.psf.ca/files/2014/ROR\\_Report.pdf](http://www.psf.ca/files/2014/ROR_Report.pdf).
- Cunjak, R.A. 1996. Winter habitat of selected stream fishes and potential impacts from land-use activity. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 53(Supplement 1): 267–282.
- DFO. 1995. Freshwater intake end-of-pipe fish screen guideline. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/library/223669.pdf>.
- DFO. 2010a. Pathways of Effects – Cleaning or Maintenance of Bridges or Other Structures. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010b. Pathways of Effects – Vegetation Clearing. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010c. Pathways of Effects – Use of Industrial Equipment. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010d. Pathways of Effects – Placement of Material or Structures in Water. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010e. Pathways of Effects – Addition or Removal of Aquatic Vegetation. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010f. Pathways of Effects – Water extraction. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010g. Pathways of Effects – Fish Passage Issues. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, O.N. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.
- DFO. 2010h. Pathways of Effects – Excavation. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Ottawa, ON. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/pathways-sequences/index-eng.html>. Accessed January 2014.

- DFO. 2013a. Framework for assessing the ecological flow requirements to support fisheries in Canada. DFO Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat Science Advisory Report 2013/017.
- DFO. 2013b. Measures to avoid causing harm to fish and fish habitat. Fisheries and Oceans Canada. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/measures-mesures/index-eng.html>. Accessed 29 November 2013.
- EC (Environment Canada). 2011. 2011 Metal Mining Environmental Effects Monitoring (EEM) Technical Guidance Document. Environment Canada, National Environmental Effects Monitoring Office. Ottawa, ON.
- Faulkner, S., T. Hatfield, S. Buchanan, D. Bustard and A. Lewis. 2012. Salmonid winter ecology in interior BC streams and implications of winter water withdrawal. Prepared by Ecofish Research Limited and Solander Ecological Research Limited for the BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC.
- Gaeta, J.W., Sass, G.G. and Carpenter, S.R. 2014. Drought-driven lake level decline: effects on coarse woody habitat and fishes. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 71: 1-11.
- Government of Canada. 2013. *Fisheries Act*. Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985 c. F-14. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/F-14/FullText.html>. Accessed 2013.
- Hatfield, T. 2012. BC Ministry of Environment Winter Flows Project. Final Report. Prepared by Ecofish Research Limited for the BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC.
- Huusko, A., L. Greenberg, M. Stickler, T. Linnansaari, M. Nykänen, T. Vehanen, S. Koljonen, P. Louhi, and K. Alfredsen. 2007. Life in the ice lane: the winter ecology of stream salmonids. *River Research and Applications* 23: 469–491.
- Jowett, I.G., J. Richardson and M.L. Bonnett. 2005. Relationship between flow regime and fish abundances in a gravel-bed river, New Zealand. *Journal of Fish Biology* 66: 1-18.
- Klinkenberg, B. (Editor). 2012. E-Fauna BC: Electronic Atlas of the Fauna of British Columbia [efauna.bc.ca]. Lab for Advanced Spatial Analysis, Department of Geography, University of British Columbia, Vancouver. Accessed at: <http://linnet.geog.ubc.ca/efauna/Atlas/Atlas.aspx?sciname=Acroloxus coloradensis&ilifeform=190>. Accessed 2014.
- Knight Piésold. 2012. Blackwater Gold – Fresh Water Supply Options Trade-Off Study (VA101-457/4-A.01). Prepared for New Gold Inc. by Knight Piésold Consultants Ltd. 2 August 2012.



- Knight Piésold. 2013a. Blackwater Gold Project – Fresh Water Supply System Design. Report No. VA101-457/6-A.01. Prepared for New Gold Inc. by Knight Piésold Consultants Ltd. 17 July 2013.
- Knight Piésold. 2013b. Revised Baseline Tatelkuz Lake Levels Letter (VA101-457/6-A.01). Prepared for New Gold Inc. by Knight Piésold Consultants Ltd. 22 July 2013.
- Knight Piésold. 2013c. Watershed Modelling Report – Blackwater Gold Project. DRAFT report prepared for New Gold Inc. by Knight Piésold Consultants Ltd. VA101-457/6-6, Revision A. 16 October 2013.
- Knight Piésold. 2013d. Tatelkuz Lake IFN Withdrawal Model (VA101-457/6-A.01). Prepared for New Gold Inc. by Knight Piésold Consultants Ltd. 22 November 2013.
- Lewis, A., T. Hatfield, B. Chilibeck and C. Roberts. 2014. Assessment methods for aquatic habitat and instream flow characteristics in support of applications to dam, divert, or extract water from streams in British Columbia. Report prepared for the BC Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection and the Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/assessment\\_methods\\_instreamflow\\_in\\_bc.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/assessment_methods_instreamflow_in_bc.pdf). Accessed 11 June 2012.
- Matthews, W.J., and E. Marsh-Matthews. 2003. Effects of drought on fish across axes of space, time and ecological complexity. *Freshwater Biology* 48: 1232-1253.
- Milhous, R.T. 1998. Modelling instream flow needs: the link between sediment and aquatic habitat. *Regulated Rivers: Research and Management* 14: 79-94.
- US FWS (United States Fish and Wildlife Service). 1981. Habitat Evaluation Procedures (HEP). ESM 102. U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Division of Ecological Services.
- Wald, A.R. 2009. Report of Investigations in Instream Flow: High flows for fish and wildlife in Washington. Habitat Program, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. Washington State Department of Printing. Olympia, WA. 29 pp.

#### ***Section 5.4.1 – Terrestrial Environment: Identification and Selection of Valued Components***

- BC MFLNRO. 2013. Draft Provincial Framework for Moose Management in British Columbia. Fish, Wildlife and Habitat Management Branch, Victoria, BC.
- Blood, D. 2000. Moose in British Columbia: ecology, conservation, and management. British Columbia Ministry of Wildlife, Lands and Parks, Victoria, BC.

Buskirk, S.W. and L.F. Ruggiero. 1994. American marten. In: *The Scientific Basis for Conserving Forest Carnivores: American marten, Fisher, Lynx and Wolverine in the Western United States*.

Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. *Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects*, 9 September 2013.

### ***Section 5.4.2 – Physiography and Topography***

Alberta Soils Advisory Committee (ASAC). 1987. *Soil Quality Criteria Relative to Disturbance and Reclamation*. Prep. by Soil Quality Working Group. Alberta Agriculture. Edmonton, AB.

BC Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 1996. *Contaminated Sites Regulation B.C. (BC CSR) Reg. 375/96 O.C. 1480/96 and M271/2004; Schedule 4*. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC.

British Columbia Ministry of Energy and Mines (BC MEM). 2002. *Aggregate Operators Best Management Practices Handbook for British Columbia*. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.

British Columbia Ministry of Energy, Mines and Natural Gas (BC MEMNG). 1998. Application requirements for a permit approving the mine plan and reclamation program pursuant to the *Mines Act* RSBC 1996, c. 293. Available at <http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/Mining/Permitting-Reclamation/Permitapplicationrequirements/Pages/default.aspx>. Accessed 2012.

British Columbia Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources (BC MEMPR). 2008. *Health, Safety and Reclamation Code for Mines in British Columbia; Part 10*. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.

Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment (CCME). 2007. *Canadian Soil Quality Guidelines for the Protection of Environmental and Human Health: Summary Tables*. Updated 2007. Available at [http://www.ccme.ca/assets/pdf/rev\\_soil\\_summary\\_tbl\\_7.0\\_e.pdf](http://www.ccme.ca/assets/pdf/rev_soil_summary_tbl_7.0_e.pdf). Accessed 2013.

Expert Committee on Soil Survey. 1983. *The Canada Soil Information System (CanSIS). Manual for describing soils in the field*. 1982 Revised. LRRRI Contribution No. 82-52. Land Resource Research Institute, Research Branch, Agriculture Canada. Ottawa, ON.

Expert Committee on Soil Survey. 1987. *Soil Survey Handbook, Vol. 1*. Coen, G.M., ed. Land Resource Research Centre, Contribution No. 85-30. Tech. Bull. 1987-9E. Research Branch, Agriculture Canada. Ottawa, ON.

- Government of British Columbia. 1996. *Mines Act*, RSBC 1996. Chapter 293. Queens Printer, Victoria, BC.
- Government of British Columbia. 2002. *Environmental Assessment Act*, SBC 2002. Chapter 43. Queens Printer, Victoria, BC.
- Howes, D.E. and E. Kenk. 1997 (contributing editors). Terrain Classification System for British Columbia (Version 2). BC Ministry of Environment, Recreational Fisheries Branch, and BC Ministry of Crown Lands, Surveys and Resource Mapping Branch. MOE Manual 10. Victoria, BC.
- Resources Inventory Committee (RIC). 1996. Guidelines and Standards for Terrain Mapping in British Columbia. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.
- Soil Classification Working Group (SCWG). 1998. The Canadian System of Soil Classification (CSSC), 3rd Edition. Publication 1646. Research Branch. Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada. Ottawa, ON.

#### **Section 5.4.3 – Surficial Geology and Soil Cover**

- Alberta Soils Advisory Committee (ASAC). 1987. Soil Quality Criteria Relative to Disturbance and Reclamation. Prep. by Soil Quality Working Group. Alberta Agriculture. Edmonton, AB.
- BC Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 1996. *Contaminated Sites Regulation* B.C. (BC CSR) Reg. 375/96 O.C. 1480/96 and M271/2004; Schedule 4. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC.
- British Columbia Ministry of Energy and Mines (BC MEM). 2002. Aggregate Operators Best Management Practices Handbook for British Columbia. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, B.C.
- British Columbia Ministry of Energy, Mines and Natural Gas (BC MEMNG). 1998. Application requirements for a permit approving the mine plan and reclamation program pursuant to the *Mines Act* RSBC 1996, c. 293. Available at <http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/Mining/Permitting-Reclamation/Permitapplicationrequirements/Pages/default.aspx>. Accessed 2012.
- British Columbia Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources (BC MEMPR). 2008. Health, Safety and Reclamation Code for Mines in British Columbia; Part 10. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, B.C.
- Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment (CCME). 2007. Canadian Soil Quality Guidelines for the Protection of Environmental and Human Health: Summary Tables.

Updated 2007. Available at  
[http://www.ccme.ca/assets/pdf/rev\\_soil\\_summary\\_tbl\\_7.0\\_e.pdf](http://www.ccme.ca/assets/pdf/rev_soil_summary_tbl_7.0_e.pdf). Accessed 2013.

Expert Committee on Soil Survey. 1983. The Canada Soil Information System (CanSIS). Manual for describing soils in the field. 1982 Revised. LRRRI Contribution No. 82-52. Land Resource Research Institute, Research Branch, Agriculture Canada. Ottawa, ON.

Expert Committee on Soil Survey. 1987. Soil Survey Handbook, Vol. 1. Coen, G.M., ed. Land Resource Research Centre, Contribution No. 85-30. Tech. Bull. 1987-9E. Research Branch, Agriculture Canada. Ottawa, ON.

Government of British Columbia. 1996. *Mines Act*, RSBC. 1996. Chapter 293. Queens Printer, Victoria, British Columbia, Canada.

Government of British Columbia. 2002. *Environmental Assessment Act (BCEAA)*, SCB. 2002. Chapter 43. Queens Printer, Victoria, British Columbia, Canada.

Howes, D.E., and Kenk, E., 1997 (contributing editors). Terrain classification system for British Columbia (Project). B.C. Ministry of Environment, Recreational Fisheries Branch, and B.C. Ministry of Crown Lands, Surveys and Resource Mapping Branch, Victoria, B.C.

Resources Inventory Committee (RIC). 1996. Guidelines and Standards for Terrain Mapping in British Columbia. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, B.C.

Soil Classification Working Group (SCWG). 1998. The Canadian System of Soil Classification (CSSC), 3rd Edition. Publication 1646. Research Branch. Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada. Ottawa, ON.

#### **Section 5.4.4 – Soil Quality**

Alberta Soils Advisory Committee (ASAC). 1987. Soil Quality Criteria Relative to Disturbance and Reclamation. Prep. by Soil Quality Working Group. Alberta Agriculture. Edmonton, AB.

Expert Committee on Soil Survey. 1983. The Canada Soil Information System (CanSIS). Manual for describing soils in the field. 1982 Revised. LRRRI Contribution No. 82-52. Land Resource Research Institute, Research Branch, Agriculture Canada. Ottawa, ON.

Expert Committee on Soil Survey. 1987. Soil Survey Handbook, Vol. 1. Coen, G.M., ed. Land Resource Research Centre, Contribution No. 85-30. Tech. Bull. 1987-9E. Research Branch, Agriculture Canada. Ottawa, ON.

Howes, D.E. and E. Kenk. 1997 (contributing editors). Terrain classification system for British Columbia (Project). B.C. Ministry of Environment, Recreational Fisheries Branch, and B.C. Ministry of Crown Lands, Surveys and Resource Mapping Branch, Victoria, BC.

Resources Inventory Committee (RIC). 1996. Guidelines and Standards for Terrain Mapping in British Columbia. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.

Soil Classification Working Group (SCWG). 1998. The Canadian System of Soil Classification (CSSC), 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition. Publication 1646. Research Branch. Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada. Ottawa, ON.

### ***Section 5.4.5 – Ecosystem Composition***

Banner, A and W. MacKenzie. 1998. Extension Note 17. Riparian Areas: Providing Landscape Habitat Diversity Part 5 of 7. Ministry of Forests Research Program.

Bobbink, R., Ashmore, M., Braun, S., Fluckiger, W. & Van den Wyngaert, I.J. 2002. Empirical Nitrogen Critical Loads for Natural and Semi-Natural Ecosystems: 2002 Update. Background Document for the Expert Workshop on Empirical Critical Loads for Nitrogen on (Semi-) Natural Ecosystems, Berne, Switzerland, November 11-13, 2002 held under the UNECE Convention on Long-range Transboundary Air Pollution. 123 pp.

Bobbink, R., Hornung, M., & Roelofs, J.G. 1998. The effects of air-borne nitrogen pollutants on species diversity in natural and semi-natural European vegetation. *Journal of Ecology* 86:717-738.

British Columbia (BC) Hydro. 2003. Approved Work Practices for Managing Riparian Vegetation. A Guide to Incorporating Riparian Environmental Concerns into the Management of Vegetation in BC Hydro's Transmission and Distribution Corridors. BC Hydro, DFO and MWLAP.

British Columbia Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2012. BC Conservation Data Centre Home. Species and Ecosystem Search. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cdc/>. Accessed January 2012.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Lands & Parks. 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. Victoria, BC: Ministry of Employment & Investment, Ministry of Environment, Lands & Parks, Ministry of Forests.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment. 2013a. EcoCat: The Ecological Reports Catalogue. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/ecocat/>. Accessed March 2013.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment. 2013b. CLIR: Cross-Linked Information Resources. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/clir/>. Accessed March 2013.

British Columbia Ministry of Forests (BC MOF). 2007. VRI relational data dictionary. Multiple Table Relationship. Draft version 1.0e, September 2007. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hts/vridata/standards/index.html>. Accessed 2010/2011.

- British Columbia Ministry of Forests and Lands, Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2011. Invasive Plants. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hra/Plants/biocontrol/index.htm>. Accessed August 2011.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests and Lands, Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2011. Invasive Plants. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hra/Plants/biocontrol/index.htm>. Accessed August 2011.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests and Lands, Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2013. Invasive Alien Plant Program (IAPP) Application. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hra/Plants/application.htm>. Accessed 2013.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests and Range (BC MOFR). 2010. Invasive Alien Plant Program Reference Guide. Part 1. Prepared by Range Branch Ministry of Forests and Range. June 2010.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests and Range and British Columbia Ministry of Environment. 2010. Field Manual for Describing Terrestrial Ecosystems 2<sup>nd</sup> edition. Forest Science Program, Victoria, B.C. Land Management Handbook Number 25.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. 2013a. The Invasive Alien Plant Program (IAPP) Application. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hra/plants/application.htm>. Accessed March 2013.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. 2013b. VRI: Vegetation Resource Inventory. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hts/vri/>. Accessed March 2013.
- Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency. 2013. Operational Policy Statement, Assessing Cumulative Environmental Effects under the Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012. May 2013. Available at <http://www.ceaa-acee.gc.ca/default.asp?lang=En&n=1DA9E048-1>. Accessed July 2013.
- Cole, D. and B. Lockner (editors). 1989. The Journals of George M. Dawson: British Columbia, 1875-1878. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.
- Cumulative Environmental Management Association (CEMA). 2008. Proposed Interim Nitrogen (Eutrophication) Management Recommendations and Work Plan for the Regional Municipality of Wood Buffalo Area. Prepared by the NOxSO2 Management Working Group of the Cumulative Environmental Management Association (CEMA) for presentation at the March 26/27 CEMA Board Meeting and approval at the June 4/5 CEMA Board Meeting. 57pp.
- DeLong, C., Tanner, D., & Jull, M.J. 1993. A Field Guide for Site Identification and Interpretation for the Southwest Portion of the Prince George Forest Region. British Columbia Ministry of Forests. Land Management Handbook Number 24.



- Edvardsson, K., & Magnusson, R. 2009. Monitoring of Dust Emissions on Gravel Roads: Development of a Mobile Methodology and Examination of Horizontal Diffusion. *Atmospheric Environment* 43 (2009) 889-896.
- Farmer, A. M. 1993. The Effects of Dust on Vegetation – a Review. *Environmental Pollution* 79, 63-75.
- Government of BC. 1996a. *Forest Practices Code Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 159.
- Government of BC. 1996b. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 293.
- Government of BC. 1996c. *Weed Control Act*. RSBC 1996, c487.
- Government of BC. 2002a. *Environmental Assessment Act*, SBC 2002, c. 43.
- Government of BC. 2002b. *Forests and Range Practices Act*. SBC 2002, c. 69.
- Government of BC. 2008. Community Charter: Spheres of Concurrent Jurisdiction – Environment and Wildlife Regulation, BC Reg. 144/2004 (includes amendments up to BC Reg. 235/2008).
- Government of Canada. 1992. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act*. SC 1992, c. 37.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29.
- Grulke, N.E., Anderson, C.P., Fenn, M.E., & Miller, P.R. 1998. Ozone exposure and nitrogen deposition lowers root biomass of ponderosa pine in the San Bernardino Mountains. *Environmental Pollution*, 103:63-73.
- Hall, L. 1992. *The Carrier, My People*. Cloverdale, BC: Friesen Printers.
- Klinkenberg, Brian. (Editor). 2013. E-Flora BC: Electronic Atlas of the Flora of British Columbia [eflora.bc.ca]. Lab for Advanced Spatial Analysis, Department of Geography, University of British Columbia, Vancouver.
- Margolis, A.H., & Waring, R.H. 1986. Carbon and nitrogen allocation patterns of Douglas fir seedlings fertilized with nitrogen in autumn. II Field performance. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 16: 903-909.
- Meidinger, D. & Pojar, J. 1991. *Ecosystems of British Columbia*. BC Ministry of Forests, Special Report Series, ISSN 0843-6452; No. 6.
- Meininger, C. & Spatt, P. 1988. Variations of Tardigrade Assemblages in Dust-impacted Arctic Mosses. *Arctic and Alpine Research*, Vol. 20, No. 1, 24-30.

- Nordin, A., Strengbom, J., Witzell, J., Nasholm, T., & Ericson, L. 2005. Nitrogen Deposition and the Biodiversity of Boreal Forests: Implications for the Nitrogen Critical Load. *Ambio* Vol. 34, No.1 20-24
- Resource Inventory Committee (RIC). 1998. Standards for Terrestrial Ecosystem Mapping in British Columbia. Prepared by Ecosystems Working Group, Terrestrial Ecosystems Task Force, and Resource Inventory Committee. May 1998.
- Richardson, D.H. & Cameron, R.P. 2004. Cyanolichens: Their response to pollution and possible management strategies for their conservation in Northeastern North America. *Northeastern Naturalist* Vol. 11, No. 1 1-22
- Stevens, V., F. Backhouse, and A. Eriksson. 1995. Riparian Management in British Columbia: an important step towards maintaining biodiversity. *Res. Br. BC Min For. Hab. Protect Br. BC Min Environment, Lands and Parks. Victoria BC. Working Paper 13/1995.*
- Throop, H.L. & Lerdau, M.T. 2004. Effects of nitrogen deposition on insect herbivory: Implications for community and ecosystem processes. *Ecosystems* 7:109-133.
- Timberline Forest Inventory Consultants Ltd. (Timberline). 2001a. Final Report for Predictive Ecosystem Mapping (PEM) of the Vanderhoof Forest District, Prince George Forest Region. Prepared for Slocan Group – Plateau Division, West Fraser Mills – Fraser Lake Sawmills Division, L&M Lumber Ltd. and Vanderhoof Forest District, British Columbia.
- Timberline Forest Inventory Consultants Ltd. (Timberline). 2001b. Predictive Ecosystem Mapping (PEM) of the Vanderhoof Forest District, Prince George Forest Region – Metadata Documentation. Prepared for Slocan Group – Plateau Division, West Fraser Mills – Fraser Lake Sawmills Division, L&M Lumber Ltd. and Vanderhoof Forest District, British Columbia.
- Turner. N. 1997. Food Plants of Interior First Peoples. Royal British Columbia Museum Handbook. UBC Press Vancouver.
- Walker, D.A. & Everett, K.R. 1987. Road Dust and its Environmental Impact on Alaskan Taiga and Tundra. *Arctic and Alpine Research* Vol. 19, No. 4, 479-489.
- Young, J and A. Hawley. Plants and medicines of Sophie Thomas: Based on the Traditional Knowledge of Sophie Thomas, Sai'Kuz Elder and Healer, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. N.p., 2004.
- Zielke, K., Bancroft, B., Byrne, K., and S. Mitchell. 2010. BCTC Windthrow Manual: A Compendium of Information and Tools for Understanding, Predicting and Managing Windthrow on the BC Coast. Report prepared for BC Timber Sales, BC Forest Service.

---

**Section 5.4.6 – Plant Species and Ecosystems at Risk**

- Ball, P., and A. Reznicek. 2002. Carex. In: *Flora of North America North of Mexico*, Vol. 23, 255–572. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Barringer, L.E., D.F. Tomback, M.B. Wunder, and S.T. McKinney. 2012. "Whitebark Pine Stand Condition, Tree Abundance, and Cone Production as Predictors of Visitation by Clark's Nutcracker." *PLoS ONE* 7(5): e37663. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0037663.
- Bobbink, R., Hornung, M. and Roelofs, J. G. M. 1998. The effects of air-borne nitrogen pollutants on species diversity in natural and semi-natural European vegetation. *Journal of Ecology*, 86: 717–738. doi: 10.1046/j.1365-2745.1998.8650717.x
- Bobbink, R., M. Ashmore, S. Braun, W. Fluckiger and I.J. Van den Wyngaert. 2002. *Empirical Nitrogen Critical Loads for Natural and Semi-Natural Ecosystems: 2002 Update*. Background Document for the Expert Workshop on Empirical Critical Loads for Nitrogen on (Semi-) Natural Ecosystems, Berne, Switzerland, November 11-13, 2002 held under the UNECE Convention on Long-range Transboundary Air Pollution. 123 pp.
- British Columbia Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2013. BC Conservation Data Centre Home. Species and Ecosystem Search. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cdc/>. Accessed October 2013.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Land and Natural Resource Operations. 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Plan (LRMP). Prepared by Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed October 2013.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Land and Natural Resource Operations. 2010. Invasive Alien Plant Program (IAPP) Reference Guide. Part 1—Module 1.10. Prepared by the Range Branch Ministry of Forests and Range. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hra/plants/RefGuide.htm>. Accessed June 2012.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Land and Natural Resource Operations. 2013. Invasive Alien Plant Program (IAPP) Application. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hra/Plants/application.htm>. Accessed June 2013.
- CEMA. 2008. Proposed Interim Nitrogen (Eutrophication) Management Recommendations and Work Plan for the Regional Municipality of Wood Buffalo Area. Prepared by the NOxSO2 Management Working Group of the Cumulative Environmental Management Association (CEMA) for presentation at the March 26/27 CEMA Board Meeting and approval at the June 4/5 CEMA Board Meeting. 57pp.
- Clason, A. 2013. A Tactical Plan for the Recovery of Whitebark Pine in the Omineca Region. Bulkley Valley Research Centre. Available at

- [http://www.whitebarkpine.ca/uploads/4/4/1/8/4418310/wbp\\_management\\_in\\_omineca.pdf](http://www.whitebarkpine.ca/uploads/4/4/1/8/4418310/wbp_management_in_omineca.pdf). Accessed February 3, 2014
- Clason, A., and R. Moody. 2014. New Gold Blackwater Whitebark Pine 5 Year Management Plan, January 2014. Prepared by Alana Clason, Bulkley Valley Research Centre, and Randy Moody Keefer Ecological Services Ltd. On file at AMEC, Burnaby, BC.
- Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). 2010. COSEWIC Assessment and Status Report on the Whitebark Pine *Pinus albicaulis* in Canada. Ottawa: Canadian Wildlife Service, Environment Canada. Available at [www.sararegistry.gc.ca/status/status\\_e.cfm](http://www.sararegistry.gc.ca/status/status_e.cfm). Accessed 2013.
- De Queiroz, K., 2007. Species concepts and species delimitation. *Systematic Biology*, 56(6), pp.879–886.
- DeLong, C., Tanner, D., and Jull, M.J. 1993. A Field Guide for Site Identification and Interpretation for the Southwest Portion of the Prince George Forest Region. British Columbia Ministry of Forests. Land Management Handbook Number 24.
- Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar (Editors). 1999. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 3: Dicotyledons (Diapensiaceae through Onagraceae). B.C. Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. 423 pp.
- Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar (Editors). 1999. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 4: Dicotyledons (Orobanchaceae through Rubiaceae). B.C. Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. 427 pp.
- Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar (Editors). 2000. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 5: Dicotyledons (Salicaceae through Zygophyllaceae) and Pteridophytes. B.C. Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. 389 pp.
- Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar (Editors). 2001. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 6: Monocotyledons (Acoraceae through Najadaceae). B.C. Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. 361 pp.
- Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar (Editors). 2001. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 7: Monocotyledons (Orchidaceae through Zosteraceae). B.C. Min. Sustain. Res. Manage., and B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. 379 pp.
- Douglas, G.W., D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar (Editors). 2002. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 8: General Summary, Maps and Keys. B.C. Min. Sustain. Res. Manage., and B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. 457 pp.
- Douglas, G.W., G.B. Straley, D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar (Editors). 1998. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 1: Gymnosperms and Dicotyledons (Aceraceae through

- Asteraceae). B.C. Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. 436 pp.
- Douglas, G.W., G.B. Straley, D.V. Meidinger, and J. Pojar (Editors). 1998. Illustrated Flora of British Columbia, Volume 2: Dicotyledons (Balsaminaceae through Cuscutaceae). B.C. Min. Environ., Lands and Parks, and B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. 401 pp.
- Edvardsson, K., & Magnusson, R. (2009). Monitoring of dust emission on gravel roads: Development of a mobile methodology and examination of horizontal diffusion. *Atmospheric Environment*, 43(4), 889-896.
- Environmental Protection Agency. 1995. [reference in Project Description, page 75]
- Environmental Protection Agency. 1995. [reference in Project Description, page 75]
- Farmer, Andrew M. 1993. The Effects of Dust on Vegetation – a Review. *Environmental Pollution* 79:63-75
- Government of BC. 1996a. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 293.
- Government of BC. 1996b. *Weed Control Act*. RSBC 1996, c487.
- Government of BC. 2002a. *Environmental Assessment Act*, SBC 2002, c. 43.
- Government of BC. 2002b. *Forest and Range Practices Act*. SBC 2002, c. 69.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species At Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29.
- Government of Canada. 2012. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act*. SC 2012, c. 19, S.52.
- Grulke, N.E., C.P. Anderson, M.E. Fenn, and P.R. Miller. 1998. "Ozone exposure and nitrogen deposition lowers root biomass of ponderosa pine in the San Bernardino Mountains." *Environmental Pollution* 103: 63–73.
- Hutchins, H.E., and R.M. Lanner. 1982. "The Central Role of Clark's Nutcracker in the Dispersal and Establishment of Whitebark Pine." *Oecologica (Berl)* 55: 192–201.
- Innes, J.L., 1991. "High-altitude and high-latitude tree growth in relation to past, present and future global climate change." *The Holocene* 1: 168–173.
- Keane, R.E., D.F. Tomback, M.P. Murray, and C.M. Smith, eds. 2011. The future of high-elevation, five-needle white pines in Western North America: Proceedings of the High Five Symposium. 28-30 June 2010; Missoula, MT. Proceedings RMRS-P-63. Fort Collins, CO: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station. Available at [http://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs\\_p063.html](http://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs_p063.html). Accessed 2013.

- Klinkenberg, B. ed. 2012. *E-Flora BC: Electronic Atlas of the Flora of British Columbia*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia, Department of Geography Lab for Advanced Spatial Analysis. Available at <http://www.eflora.bc.ca>. Accessed July 2013.
- Lilleskov, E.A., T.J. Fahey, T.R. Horton, and G.M. Lovett. 2002. "Belowground ectomycorrhizal fungal community change over a nitrogen deposition gradient in Alaska." *Ecology* 83: 104–115.
- Margolis, H.A., and R.H. Waring. 1986. "Carbon and nitrogen allocation patterns of Douglas fir seedlings fertilized with nitrogen in autumn. II. Field performance." *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 16: 903–909.
- McKinney, S.T., C.E. Fiedler, and D.F. Tomback. 2009. "Invasive pathogen threatens bird-pine mutualism: implications for sustaining a high-elevation ecosystem." *Ecological Applications* 19: 597–607. doi: 10.1890/08-0151.1
- Meininger, C. & Spatt, P. 1988. Variations of Tardigrade Assemblages in Dust-impacted Arctic Mosses. *Arctic and Alpine Research*, Vol. 20, No. 1, 24-30.
- Mohatt, K., C.L. Cripps, and M. Lavin. 2008. "Ectomycorrhizal fungi of whitebark pine (a tree in peril) revealed by sporocarps and molecular analysis of mycorrhizae from treeline forests in the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem." *Botany* 86: 14–25. doi:10.1139/B07-107
- Nordin, A., Strengbom, J., Witzell, J., Nasholm, T., & Ericson, L. 2005. Nitrogen Deposition and the Biodiversity of Boreal Forests: Implications for the Nitrogen Critical Load. *Ambio* Vol. 34, No.1 20-24
- RIC 1998. Standard for Terrestrial Ecosystem Mapping in British Columbia. Province of British Columbia, Victoria. Resource Inventory Committee.
- Richardson, D.H. & Cameron, R.P. 2004. Cyanolichens: Their response to pollution and possible management strategies for their conservation in Northeastern North America. *Northeastern Naturalist* Vol. 11, No. 1 1-22
- Schwandt, J.W., I.B. Lockman, J.T. Kliejunas, and J.A. Muir. 2010. "Current health issues and management strategies for white pines in the western United States and Canada." *Forest Pathology* 40: 226–250.
- Smith C.M., B. Shepherd, C. Gillies and J. Stuart-Smith. 2012 Changes in blister rust infection and mortality in whitebark pine over time. *Can. J. For. Res* 43: 90-96 (2013) [dx.doi.org/10.1139/cjfr.2012-0127](http://dx.doi.org/10.1139/cjfr.2012-0127). NRC Researcher Press.
- Throop, H.L., and Lerdau, M.T., 2004. Effects of nitrogen deposition on insect herbivory: Implications for community and ecosystem processes. *Ecosystems*, 7: 109-133



Tomback, D. et al., 2005. Draft protocol for monitoring Clark's Nutcracker populations. Prepared by Whitebark Pine Ecosystem Foundation.

Walker, D.A. and K.R. Everett. 1987. Road Dust and its Environmental Impact on Alaskan Taiga and Tundra. *Arctic and Alpine Research* Vol. 19, No. 4, 479-489

Weaver 2001. "Whitebark pine and its environment." In *Whitebark Pine Communities: Ecology And Restoration*, eds. D. Tomback, S. Arno, and R. Keane. Washington, DC: Island Press, 41–73.

### **Section 5.4.7 – Amphibians**

AMEC. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project Baseline Report: Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat. Prepared for New Gold. 172 pp.

Bartelt, P.E. and C.R. Peterson. 1994. Riparian habitat utilization by western toads (*Bufo boreas*) and spotted frogs (*Rana pretiosa*) on the Targee National Forest. USDA Forest Service Contract #INT-93780-CCSA Final Report.

Bartelt, P.E., C.R. Peterson, and R.W. Klaver. 2004. Sexual differences in the post-breeding movements and habitats selected by western toads (*Anaxyrus boreas*) in southeastern Idaho. *Herpetologica* 60:455-467.

BC Conservation Data Centre (CDC). 2013. Species Summary: *Anaxyrus boreas*. BC Ministry of Environment. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed October 8, 2013.

BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2013. Fact sheets for Western Toads in British Columbia. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/frogwatch/publications/factsheets/frogs/western-toad.htm>. Accessed 2013.

Black, J.H., and J.N. Black. 1969. Postmetamorphic basking aggregations of the boreal toad, *Bufo boreas boreas*. *The Canadian Field Naturalist*, 83: 155-156.

Brown, C. 2010. Habitat use by western toads in north-central Alberta and the influence of scale. PhD Dissertation, University of Alberta, pp.245.

Campbell, J.B. 1970. Life history of *Bufo boreas boreas* on the Colorado Front Range PhD. Dissertation. University of Colorado, Boulder, CO.

Carrier Sekani Nations. 2014. Carrier Sekani Family Services website. Available at <http://www.csfs.org/files/carrier-sekani-nations.php>. Accessed February 2014.

COSEWIC. 2002. COSEWIC assessment and status report on the western toad *Bufo boreas* in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada. Ottawa, ON.

- Davis, T.M. 2000. Ecology of the western toad (*Bufo boreas*) in forested areas on Vancouver Island. Final Report. Forest Renewal BC Ministry of Forests, Victoria, BC.
- Davis, T.M. 2002. Research Priorities for the Management of the Western Toad, *Bufo boreas*, in British Columbia. Wildlife Working Report No. WR-106. British Columbia Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection, Government of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.
- Gregory, P.T. and R.W. Campbell. 1984. The reptiles of British Columbia. Handbook 44, British Columbia Provincial Museum, Victoria, BC. 103 pp.
- Gyug, L. 1996. Part IV Amphibians. In, Timber Harvesting Effects on Riparian Wildlife and Vegetation in the Okanagan Highlands of British Columbia. BC Ministry of Environment, Penticton, BC.
- Jones, M.S. 1999. Preface. In, Jones, M.S. (ed.). Boreal toad research progress report 1998. Colorado Division of Wildlife, Fort Collins, CO.
- Kinsey, S.J. and Law, L.E. 1998. Inventory of amphibians and reptiles in the Prince George Forest District. Report for BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Prince George, B.C. FRBC Project No. OP96 223.
- Klinkenberg, B. (Editor) 2012. E-Fauna BC: Electronic Atlas of the Fauna of British Columbia [efauna.bc.ca]. Lab for Advanced Spatial Analysis, Department of Geography, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC. Accessed 8 October 2013.
- Leonard, B.P., K.R. McAllister, L. Jones, H. Brown, and R.M. Storm. 1993. *Amphibians of Washington and Oregon*. Seattle: Seattle Audubon Society.
- Matsuda, B.M., D.M. Green, and P.T. Gregory. 2006. Amphibians and reptiles of British Columbia. Royal BC Museum Handbook. Victoria, BC.
- NatureServe. 2012. NatureServe explorer. Available at <http://www.natureserve.org/explorer/servlet/NatureServe?init=Species>. Accessed 2013.
- Richter, K. 1997. Criteria for the Restoration and Creation of Wetland Habitats of Lentic-breeding Amphibians of the Pacific Northwest. In, Macdonald, K.B., and F. Weinmann. (eds.). Wetland and Riparian Restoration: Taking a Broader View. Contributed Papers and Selected Abstracts, Society for Ecological Restoration, 1995 International Conference, September 14-16, 1995, University of Seattle, WA. Publication EPA 910-R-97-007, USEPA, Region 10, Seattle, WA.
- RISC. 1998. Inventory methods for pond-breeding amphibians and painted turtle. Prepared by Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks Resources Inventory Branch for the Terrestrial Ecosystems Task Force Resources Inventory Committee (Version 2.0).

Stebbins, R.C. 1985. *Western Reptiles and Amphibians*. 2nd Ed. The Peterson Field Guide Series National Audubon Society and National Wildlife Federation. Houghton Mifflin Co, Boston.

Stevens, V. 1995. *Wildlife diversity in British Columbia: distribution and habitat use of amphibians, reptiles, birds, and mammals in biogeoclimatic zones*. Research Branch, BC Ministry of Forests, Wildlife Branch, BC Ministry of Environment Lands and Parks, Victoria, BC, Working Paper 04/1995.

Sullivan, J. 1994. *Bufo boreas*. In, Fischer, W.C. (compiler). *The Fire Effects Information System (Database)*. Intermountain Fire Sciences Laboratory, Intermountain Research Station. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Missoula, MT.

Verner, J. and A.S. Boss. 1980. *California Wildlife and their Habitats: Western Sierra Nevada*. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station.

Wind, E.I. and L.A. Dupuis. 2002. *COSEWIC Status Report on the Western Toad Bufo boreas in Canada*. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada. Ottawa, ON.

#### **Section 5.4.8 – Water Birds**

AMEC. 2013. *Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat 2011 – 2013 Baseline Report*. Report prepared for New Gold Blackwater Gold Project.

Andrén, H. 1994. *Effects of Habitat Fragmentation on Birds and Mammals in Landscapes with Different Proportions of Suitable Habitat: A Review*. *Oikos* 71:355-366.

BC Conservation Data Centre (CDC). 2013. *BC Species and Ecosystem Explorer*. BC Ministry of Environment. Available at: <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed October 2013.

BC Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. *Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects*. Available at [http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO\\_Valued\\_Components\\_Guideline\\_2013\\_09\\_09.pdf](http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO_Valued_Components_Guideline_2013_09_09.pdf) Accessed October 2013.

BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2014. *Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs)*. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>. Accessed February 2014.

Bennett, A.F. and L.A. Ford. 1997. *Land Use, Habitat Change and the Conservation of Birds in Fragmented Rural Environments: a Landscape Perspective from the Northern Plains*, Victoria, Australia. *Pacific Conservation Biology* 3: 244-61.

- Bird Studies Canada. 2013. BC Breeding Bird Atlas Species Maps. Bird Studies Canada. Available at: <http://www.birdatlas.bc.ca/bcdata/maps.jsp>. Accessed October 2013.
- Bookhout, T.A. and J.R. Stenzel. 1987. Habitat and movements of breeding Yellow Rails. *Wilson Bull.* 99:441-447.
- Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). 2002. COSEWIC Assessment and Status Report on the Yellow Rail *Coturnicops noveboracensis* in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada. Ottawa, ON.
- Environment Canada (EC). 2013. Bird Conservation Strategy for Bird Conservation Region 10–Pacific and Yukon Region: Northern Rockies. Canadian Wildlife Service, Environment Canada. Delta, BC.
- Fahrig, L. 1997. Relative Effects of Habitat Loss and Fragmentation on Species Extinction. *Journal of Wildlife Management.* 61: 603-610.
- GeoBC. 2014. Freshwater Atlas. Available at <ftp://ftp.geobc.gov.bc.ca/pub/outgoing/FreshWaterAtlasDocuments/>. Accessed February 2014.
- Gibbs, J. 1998. Amphibian Movements in Response to forest Edges, Roads, and Streambeds in Southern New England. *Journal of Wildlife Management.* 62:584–58.
- Goldade, C., J. Dechant, D. Johnson, A. Zimmerman, B. Jamison, J. Church, and B. Euliss. 2002. Effects of management practices on wetland birds: Yellow Rail. Northern Prairie Wildlife Research Center, Jamestown, North Dakota. Available at <http://www.npwrc.usgs.gov/resource/literatr/wetbird/yera/yera.htm>. Accessed November 2013.
- Government of British Columbia. 1996a. Wildlife Act. RSBC 1996, c. 488. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96488\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96488_01). Accessed February 2014.
- Government of British Columbia. 1996b. Mines Act. RSBC 1996, c. 296. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/Recon/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96293\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/Recon/document/ID/freeside/00_96293_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of British Columbia. 2002. Forest and Range Practices Act. SBC 2002. c. 69. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02069\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02069_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of Canada. 1994. Migratory Bird Convention Act, 1994. SC 1994. c. 22. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/M-7.01/page-1.html>. Accessed March 2014.

Government of Canada. 2002. Species at Risk Act. SC 2002, c. 29. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/S-15.3/page-1.html>. Accessed March 2014.

Homan, R., B. Windmiller, and J. Reed. 2004. Critical Thresholds Associated with Habitat Loss for Two Vernal Pool-breeding Amphibians. *Ecological Applications*. 14(5):1547-1553.

Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed March 2014.

Resources Information Standards Committee (RISC). 1999. Inventory methods for waterfowl and allied species. Prepared by Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks Resources Inventory Branch for the Terrestrial Ecosystems Task Force Resources Inventory Committee (Version 2.0).

Sidie-Slettedahl, A. 2013. Evaluating the Use of Autonomous Recording Units to Monitor Yellow Rails, Nelson's sparrows, and Le Conte's sparrows. M.Sc. thesis. South Dakota State University, Madison, South Dakota.

Swift, T.L., and S.J. Hannon. 2010. Critical Thresholds Associated with Habitat Loss: a Review of the Concepts, Evidence, and Applications. *Biological Reviews* 85:35-53.

Villard M-A, M.K. Trzcinski, and G. Merriam. 1999. Fragmentation Effects on Forest Birds: Relative Influence of Woodland Cover and Configuration on Landscape Occupancy. *Conservation Biology*. 13:774-83.

Zielke, K., B. Bancroft, K. Byrne, and S. Mitchell. 2010. BCTC Windthrow Manual: A Compendium of Information and Tools for Understanding, Predicting and Managing Wind throw on the BC Coast. Report prepared for BC Timber Sales, BC Forest Service.

#### **Section 5.4.9 – Forest and Grassland Birds**

Altman, B. and R. Sallabanks. 2000. Olive-sided Flycatcher (*Contopus cooperi*), in *The Birds of North America*, No. 502 (A. Poole and F. Gill, eds.). Birds of North America, Cornell University, Philadelphia, PA.

AMEC. 2013. Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat 2011 – 2013 Baseline Report. Report prepared for New Gold Blackwater Gold Project.

Andrén, H. 1994. Effects of Habitat Fragmentation on Birds and Mammals in Landscapes with Different Proportions of Suitable Habitat: A Review. *Oikos* 71:355-366.

BC Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects. Available at

- [http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO\\_Valued\\_Components\\_Guideline\\_2013\\_09\\_09.pdf](http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO_Valued_Components_Guideline_2013_09_09.pdf)  
Accessed October 2013.
- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2014. Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs). Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>. Accessed February 2014.
- Bennett, A.F. and L.A. Ford. 1997. Land Use, Habitat Change and the Conservation of Birds in Fragmented Rural Environments: a Landscape Perspective from the Northern Plains, Victoria, Australia. *Pacific Conservation Biology* 3: 244-61.
- Bird Studies Canada. 2012. British Columbia Breeding Bird Atlas (BCBBA). Available at <http://www.birdatlas.bc.ca/english/index.jsp>. Accessed December 2013.
- British Columbia Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2014. BC Species and Ecosystem Explorer. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed March 2014.
- Campbell, R., G. Smith, M. McNall, G. Kaiser, J. Cooper, I. McTaggart-Cowan, and N. Dawn. 1990. The Birds of British Columbia. Vol II. Non-passerines, Diurnal Birds of Prey through Woodpeckers. Royal BC Museum, Victoria, and Canadian Wildlife Service, Delta, BC.
- Clason, A. and R. Moody. 2013a. New Gold Blackwater Project Whitebark Pine Management Plan Update January 2013. Report prepared for New Gold.
- Clason, A., and R. Moody. 2013b. New Gold Blackwater Project Whitebark Pine Management Field Season 2013 Summary. Report prepared for New Gold.
- Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). 2007. COSEWIC Assessment and Status Report on the Olive-sided Flycatcher *Contopus cooperi* in Canada. Ottawa, ON.
- COSEWIC. 2014. COSEWIC Wildlife Species Database Search. Available at [http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/eng/sct5/index\\_e.cfm](http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/eng/sct5/index_e.cfm). Accessed February 2014.
- Environment Canada (EC). 2013. Bird Conservation Strategy for Bird Conservation Region 10–Pacific and Yukon Region: Northern Rockies. Canadian Wildlife Service, Environment Canada. Delta, BC.
- Fahrig, L. 1997. Relative Effects of Habitat Loss and Fragmentation on Species Extinction. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 61: 603-610.
- Gibbs, J. 1998. Amphibian movements in response to forest edges, roads, and streambeds in southern New England. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 62:584–58.



- Government of British Columbia. 1996a. *Wildlife Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 488. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96488\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96488_01). Accessed February 2014.
- Government of British Columbia. 1996b. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 296. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/Recon/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96293\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/Recon/document/ID/freeside/00_96293_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of British Columbia. 2002. *Forest and Range Practices Act*. SBC 2002. c. 69. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02069\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02069_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of Canada. 1994. *Migratory Bird Convention Act, 1994*. SC 1994. c. 22. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/M-7.01/page-1.html>. Accessed March 2014.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/S-15.3/page-1.html>. Accessed March 2014.
- Homan, R., B. Windmiller, and J. Reed. 2004. Critical Thresholds Associated with Habitat Loss for Two Vernal Pool-breeding Amphibians. *Ecological Applications*. 14(5):1547-1553.
- Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed March 2014.
- Preston, C.R. and R.D. Beane. 2009. Red-tailed Hawk (*Buteo jamaicensis*), The Birds of North America Online (A. Poole, Ed.). Ithaca: Cornell Lab of Ornithology; The Birds of North America. Available at <http://bna.birds.cornell.edu/bna/species/052>. Accessed December 2013.
- Resources Information Standards Committee (RISC). 1999. British Columbia Wildlife Habitat Rating Standards. Prepared by BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks Resources Inventory Branch for the Terrestrial Ecosystems Task Force Resources Inventory Committee (Version 2.0).
- Swift, T.L. and S.J. Hannon. 2010. Critical Thresholds Associated with Habitat Loss: a Review of the Concepts, Evidence, and Applications. *Biological Reviews* 85:35-53.
- Tomback, D.F. 1998. Clark's Nutcracker (*Nucifraga columbiana*). Species Account Number 331. The Birds of North America (A. Poole, Ed.). Ithaca, NY: Cornell Laboratory of Ornithology; The Birds of North America. Available at <http://bna.birds.cornell.edu/bna/>. Accessed 28 March 2013.

Villard, M-A., M.K. Trzcinski, and G. Merriam. 1999. Fragmentation Effects on Forest Birds: Relative Influence of Woodland Cover and Configuration on Landscape Occupancy. *Conservation Biology*. 13:774–83.

Wiggins, D.A., D.W. Holt, and S.M. Leasure. 2006. *Short-eared Owl (Asio flammeus)*: The Birds of North America. A. Poole, ed. Ithaca: Cornell Lab of Ornithology. Available at <http://bna.birds.cornell.edu/bna/species/062>. Accessed October 2013.

### **Section 5.4.10 – Moose**

AMEC. 2013. Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat 2011–2013 Baseline Report. Prepared for New Gold Blackwater Gold Project.

Andrén, H. 1994. Effects of Habitat Fragmentation on Birds and Mammals in Landscapes with Different Proportions of Suitable Habitat: A Review. *Oikos* 71:355-366.

BC Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects. Available at [http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO\\_Valued\\_Components\\_Guideline\\_2013\\_09\\_09.pdf](http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO_Valued_Components_Guideline_2013_09_09.pdf). Accessed October 2013.

BC MFLNRO. 2013. Draft Provincial Framework for Moose Management in British Columbia. Fish, Wildlife and Habitat Management Branch, Victoria, BC.

BC MFLNRO. 2014. Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs). Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>. Accessed February 2014.

BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2012. 2012–2014 Hunting & Trapping regulations synopsis. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/1214/docs/hunting\\_trapping\\_2012\\_2014.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/1214/docs/hunting_trapping_2012_2014.pdf). Accessed 2012.

Bennett, A.F. and L.A. Ford. 1997. Land Use, Habitat Change and the Conservation of Birds in Fragmented Rural Environments: a Landscape Perspective from the Northern Plains, Victoria, Australia. *Pacific Conservation Biology* 3: 244-61.

Blood, D. 2000. Moose in British Columbia: ecology, conservation, and management. British Columbia Ministry of Wildlife, Lands and Parks, Victoria, BC.

British Columbia Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2014. BC Species and Ecosystem Explorer. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed March 2014.

- Darimont, C., P. Paquet, T. Reimchen, and V. Crichton. 2005. Range expansion by moose into coastal temperate rainforests of British Columbia, Canada. *Diversity and Distributions* 11: 235-239.
- Government of BC. 1996a. *Wildlife Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 488. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96488\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96488_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of BC. 1996b. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996, c 296. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/Recon/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96293\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/Recon/document/ID/freeside/00_96293_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of BC. 2002. *Forest and Range Practices Act*. SBC 2002. c. 69. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02069\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02069_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Hatter, J. 1950. The moose of central British Columbia. Ph.D. Thesis, The State College of Washington, Pullman, WA.
- Heard, D. Personal communication. 25 July 2012. BC Ministry of Environment, Prince George, BC.
- Heard, D., K. Zimmerman, G. Watts, and S. Barry. 1999. Moose density and composition around Prince George, British Columbia, December 1998. Report for Common Land Information Base. Project No. 99004.
- Indigenous Work Force. 2013. Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Project 2013. Available at <http://www.indigenousworkforce.org/sample-page/projects-in-2013/lhooskuz-dene-nation-project-2013/>. Accessed February 2013.
- Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed March 2014.
- Interviews with Dakelh Elders. 2013, May. One-on-one interviews. Stoney Creek, BC, Canada.
- Messier, F. 1994. Ungulate population-models with predation—a case study with the North American moose. *Ecology* 75:478–488.
- Resources Inventory Standards Committee (RISC). 1998. Ground Based Inventory Methods for Select Ungulates (Moose, Elk and Deer) Version 1.0. Prepared by Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks Resources Inventory Branch for the Terrestrial Ecosystems Task Force Resources Inventory Standards Committee (Version 2.0).
- Seip, D. 2008. Mountain caribou interactions with wolves and moose in central British Columbia. *Alces* 44:1-5.

Swift, T.L. and S.J. Hannon. 2010. Critical thresholds associated with habitat loss: a review of the concepts, evidence, and applications. *Biological Reviews* 85:35-53.

Trapline TR0512T014. 2013. Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Trapline Holder . Interviews with Trapline Holders. BC.

Villard, M-A., M.K. Trzcinski, and G. Merriam. 1999. Fragmentation Effects on Forest Birds: Relative Influence of Woodland Cover and Configuration on Landscape Occupancy. *Conservation Biology*. 13:774–83.

Walker, A., D. Heard, V. Michelfelder, and G. Watts. 2006. Moose density and composition around Prince George, British Columbia, January 2006. Report for Forests For Tomorrow. Project No. 2914000.

#### ***Section 5.4.11 – Caribou***

AMEC. 2013. Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat 2011–2013 Baseline Report. Prepared for New Gold Blackwater Gold Project.

Andr n, H. 1994. Effects of habitat fragmentation on birds and mammals in landscapes with different proportions of suitable habitat: a review. *Oikos* 71:355-366.

Apps, C., B. McLellan, T. Kinley, and J. Flaa. 2001. Scale-dependent Habitat Selection by Mountain Caribou in the Columbia Mountains, British Columbia. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 65:64-77.

Apps, C., B. McLellan, T. Kinley, R. Serrouya, D. Seip, and H. Wittmer. 2013. Spatial factors related to mortality and population decline of endangered mountain caribou. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 77: 1409-1419.

Armleder, H. and M. Waterhouse. 2008. Mountain pine beetle and northern caribou: the Itcha-Ilgachuz experience. In *Mountain Pine Beetle: From Lessons Learned to Community-based Solutions Conference Proceedings*, June 10-11, 2008. *BC Journal of Ecosystems and Management* 9(3): 102-105.

Arsenault, A.A. and M. Manseau. 2011. Land management strategies for the recovery of boreal woodland caribou in central Saskatchewan. *Rangifer Special Issue No. 19*: 33-48.

Baskin, L.M. 1970. Reindeer: their Ecology and Behaviour. A.N. Sventsov Institute of Evolutionary Morphology and Ecology of Animals. Nauka Pub. House, Moscow (Translated from Russian, Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa, ON).

BC Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2014. BC Species and Ecosystem Explorer. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed March 2014.

- BC Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 1979. Preliminary Caribou Management Plan for British Columbia, Victoria, BC.
- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2013. Hunting and Trapping Regulations. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/>
- BC MOE. 2013. Caribou Distribution in British Columbia by Ecotype. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/speciesconservation/caribou\\_by\\_ecotype.html](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/speciesconservation/caribou_by_ecotype.html). Accessed 21 May 2013.
- Bergerud, A.T. 1972. Food habits of Newfoundland Caribou. *Journal of Wildlife. Mgmt.* 36(3): 913-923.
- Bergerud, A.T. 1992. Rareness as an Antipredator Strategy to Reduce Predation Risk for Moose and Caribou. In *Wildlife 2001 Populations*: Edited by D.R. McCullough and R.H. Barret, Elsevier Science Publications Ltd., London, 1008-1021.
- Bergerud, A.T. 1996. Evolving Perspectives on Caribou Population Dynamics, Have we Got it Right Yet? *Rangifer*, 9: 95-118.
- Bergerud, A.T., and J.P. Elliot. 1986. Dynamics of Caribou and Wolves in northern British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Zoology*. 64: 1515-1529.
- Bergerud, A.T., and M.J. Nolan. 1970. Food Habits of Hand-reared Caribou *Rangifer tarandus L.* in Newfoundland. *Oikos* 21: 348-350.
- Bergerud, A.T., Ferguson, R., and H.E. Butler. 1990. Spring Migration and Dispersion of Woodland Caribou at Calving. *Animal Behavior*. 39:360-368.
- Bergerud, A.T., H.E. Butler, and D.R. Miller 1984. Anti-predator Tactics of Calving Caribou: Dispersion in Mountains. *Canadian Journal of Zoology*. 52: pp.1566-1575.
- Calef, G.W. 1981. Caribou and the Barren-lands. Canadian Arctic Resources Committee, Ottawa, ON.
- Cichowski, D.B. 1989. Seasonal movements, habitat use, and winter feeding ecology of woodland caribou in west-central British Columbia. MSc. thesis. University of BC, Vancouver, BC, 143 p.
- Cichowski, D.B. 1993. Seasonal Movements, Habitat Use, and Winter Feeding Ecology of Woodland Caribou in West Central British Columbia. BC Ministry of Forests, Land Management Report No. 79. 54pp.
- Cichowski, D.B. 1996. Managing Woodland Caribou in West-Central British Columbia. *Rangifer* (Special Issue) 9:119-126.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Cichowski, D.B. 2010. Tweedsmuir-Entiako Caribou Project: Effects of a Mountain Pine Beetle Epidemic on Northern Caribou Habitat Use – Final Report. Prepared for the Bulkley Valley Centre for Natural Resources Research and Management, Smithers, BC. 66 p.
- Cichowski, D.B. 2013. Tweedsmuir-Entiako Caribou Fall Calf Survival Study, October 27, 2013. Memo prepared for Ulkatcho First Nations and New Gold Inc. by Caribou Ecological Consulting.
- Cichowski, D.B. and A. Banner. 1993. Management Strategy and Options for the Tweedsmuir-Entiako Caribou Winter Range. Land Management Report No. 83. BC Ministry of Forests, Victoria, BC.
- Cichowski, D.B. and N. MacLean. 2005. Tweedsmuir-Entiako Caribou Population – Technical Background Information Summary (1983-2003). Prepared for BC Ministry of Environment, Smithers, BC, 199 p.
- Cichowski, D.B., A. Macadam and S. Haeussler. 2009. Mountain Pine Beetle/Lichen Project – Quesnel TSA – Year 4 – 2008/09. Prepared for BC Ministry of Environment, Williams Lake, BC, 79 p.
- Cichowski, D.B., B. Lawson, D. McLennan, P. Williston, J. Carlson, C. Schell, T. White, B. Armitage, and N. Guy. 2001. Entiako Park and Protected Area Ecosystem Management Study. Prepared for BC Parks, Smithers, BC.
- Cichowski, D.B., Kinley, T., and B. Churchill. 2004. Caribou *Rangifer tarandus*. Accounts and Measures for Managing Identified Wildlife – Accounts V. BC Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection. 2004. Biodiversity Branch, Identified Wildlife Management Strategy, Victoria, BC.
- Cichowski, D.B., P. Williston and S. Haeussler. 2008. The Response of Caribou Terrestrial Forage Lichens to Mountain Pine Beetles and Forest Harvesting in the East Ootsa and Entiako Areas: Annual Report – 2007/08 – Year 7. A report to Morice-Lakes Innovative Forest Practices Agreement, Prince George, BC, the Bulkley Valley Centre for Natural Resources Research and Management, Smithers, BC, and BC Ministry of Environment, Prince George, BC, 46 p.
- Clement, C. 1987. Caribou Habitat Units of the Itcha and Ilgachuz Area. Report prepared for BC Ministry of Forests and Lands. 31 pp.
- Clement, C. and R. Dalziel. 1999. Ecosystem Units of the Itcha/Ilgachuz area. Vol 1 – Expanded Legend. Report prepared for BC Min. of Environ. Lands and Parks. 203 pp.
- Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). 2002. COSEWIC assessment and update status report on the woodland caribou *Rangifer tarandus* caribou in Canada. Ottawa, ON.



- COSEWIC. 2011. Designatable Units for Caribou (*Rangifer tarandus*) in Canada. Ottawa, ON, 88 pp.
- Cowan, I.M. and C. Guiget. 1965. The Mammals of British Columbia. British Columbia Provincial Museum Handbook No. 11 BC Provincial Museum, Victoria, BC.
- DeCesare, N.J., M. Hebblewhite, F. Schmiegelow, D. Hervieux, G.J. McDermid, L. Neufeld, M. Bradley, J. Whittington, K.G. Smith, L.E. Morgantini, M. Wheatley, and M. Musiani. 2012. Transcending Scale Dependence in Identifying Habitat with Resource Selection Functions. *Ecological Applications* 22(4):1068-1083.
- Dyer, S.J., J.P. O'Neill, S.M. Wasel, and S. Boutin. 2001. Avoidance of Industrial Development by Woodland Caribou. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 65: 531-542
- Ecofor. 2012. Furbearer and ungulate winter track survey. Prepared for AMEC Environment & Infrastructure, Burnaby, BC.
- Edmonds, E.J. 1988. Population status, distribution, and movements of woodland caribou in west central Alberta. *Canadian Journal of Zoology* 66:817-826.
- Edmonds, E.J. and K.G. Smith. 1991. Mountain caribou calf production and survival, and calving and summer habitat use in west-central Alberta. *Wildlife Research Series No. 4*, Alberta Fish and Wildlife Division, Edmonton, AB. 16 p.
- Edmonds, E.J. and M.I. Bloomfield. 1984. A Study of Woodland Caribou in West-central Alberta, 1979-1983. Alberta Energy and Natural Resources, Fish and Wildlife Division, Edson, AB.
- Edwards, R.Y., J. Soos, and R.W. Ritcey. 1960. Quantitative Observations on Epidendric Lichens used as Food by Caribou. *Ecology* 41: 425 - 431.
- Environment Canada. 2011. Scientific review for the identification of critical habitat for woodland caribou (*Rangifer tarandus caribou*), Boreal Population, in Canada: 2011 Update. Ottawa, ON. 102 pp + Appendices.
- Environment Canada. 2012. Recovery Strategy for the Woodland Caribou (*Rangifer tarandus caribou*), Boreal population, in Canada. *Species at Risk Act Recovery Strategy Series*. Environment Canada, Ottawa. xi + 138 p.
- Environment Canada. 2014. Recovery Strategy for the Woodland Caribou, Southern Mountain population (*Rangifer tarandus caribou*) in Canada [Proposed]. *Species at Risk Act Recovery Strategy Series*. Environment Canada, Ottawa. viii + 68 pp.
- Fahrig, L. 1997. Relative effects of habitat loss and fragmentation on species extinction. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 61:603-610.

- Fahrig, L. 2001. How much habitat is enough? *Biological Conservation* 100: 65-74.
- Freeman, N. 2008. Motorized backcountry recreation and stress response in mountain caribou (*Rangifer tarandus caribou*). MSc. Thesis. University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC. 75p.
- Gadd, B. 1986. Handbook of the Canadian Rockies. Corax Press, Box 1557, Jasper, Alberta. T0E 1E0.
- Government of British Columbia. 1996. *Wildlife Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 488.
- Government of British Columbia. 2002. *Forest and Range Practices Act*. SBC 2002, c. 69.
- Government of British Columbia. 2014. Conservation Framework. BC Ministry of Environment. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/conservationframework/>.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29.
- Harrington, F.H. and A.M. Veitch. 1992. Calving Success of Woodland Caribou Exposed to Low-level Jet Fighter Overflights. *Arctic* 45:213-218
- Hatler, D.F. 1986. Studies of Radio-Collared Caribou in the Spatsizi Wilderness Park Area, British Columbia, 1980-1984. Spatsizi Assoc. for Biol. Research, Rep. No. 3. Victoria, BC. 202 pp.
- Hatter, J. 1977. British Columbia Ungulate Species Regional Population Estimates and Status, Preseason 1997. BC Ministry of Environment, Williams Lake, BC.
- Hebblewhite, M., M. Musiani, N. DeCesare, S. Hazenberg, W. Peters, H. Robinson, and B. Weckworth. 2010. Linear features, forestry and wolf predation of caribou and other prey in west central Alberta. Final report to the Petroleum Technology Alliance of Canada (PTAC). 84 p.
- Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed March 2014.
- James, A.R.C. and A.K. Stuart-Smith. 2000. Distribution of Caribou and Wolves in Relation to Linear Corridors. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 64: 154-159.
- James, A.R.C., S. Boutin, D.M. Hebert, and B. Rippin. 2004. Spatial Separation of Caribou from Moose and its Relationship to Predation by Wolves. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 68: 799-809.

- Johnson, C.K., K.L. Parker, and D.C. Heard. 2000. Feeding Site Selection by Woodland Caribou in North-central British Columbia. *Rangifer (Special Issue)* 12:159-172.
- Johnson, C.K., K.L. Parker, D.C. Heard, and M.P. Gillingham. 2002. A Multi-scale Behavioural Approach to Understanding the Movements of Woodland Caribou. *Ecological Applications* 12:1840-1860.
- Johnson, C.K., Parker, K.L., Heard, D.C., and D.R. Seip. 2004. Movements, Foraging Habits, and Habitat use Strategies of Northern Woodland Caribou during Winter: Implications for Forest Practices in British Columbia. *BC Journal of Ecosystems and Management* 5(1):22-35.
- Klein, D.R. 1980. Reaction of Caribou and Reindeer to Obstructions-a Reassessment. Pp 519-527 In. *Proc. of 2nd International Reindeer/Caribou Symposium*.
- Lance, A.N. and B. Mills. 1996. Attributes of Woodland Caribou Migration Habitat in West-Central British Columbia. *Rangifer, Special Issue No. 9*. pp. 355-360.
- Lawler, J.P., A.J. Magoun, C.T. Seaton, C.L. Gardner, R.D. Boertje, J.M. Ver Hoef, and P.A. Del Vecchio. 2005. Short-term Impacts of Military Overflights on Caribou during Calving Season. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 69(3):1133-1146
- Marshall, R., 1985. Second progress report of the Tweedsmuir-Entiako caribou study, June 1984-April 1985. BC Environment, Smithers, BC.
- McCutchen, N.A. 2007. Factors Affecting Caribou Survival in Northern Alberta: the Role of Wolves, Moose, and Linear Features. PhD. Thesis. University of Alberta. Edmonton. 187 pp.
- McNay, R.S. 2009. Spatial and temporal patterns of predation risk on woodland caribou in the Wolverine and Chase herds, north-central British Columbia, 1991-2006. Peace/Williston Fish and Wildlife Compensation Program Report No. 323. 28 p plus appendices.
- Mountain Caribou Technical Advisory Committee. 2002. A Strategy for the Recovery of Mountain Caribou in British Columbia. BC Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/mtcaribou\\_rcvrystrat02.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/mtcaribou_rcvrystrat02.pdf). Accessed February 2014.
- Nellemann, C. and R.D. Cameron. 1998. Cumulative Impacts of an Evolving Oil Field Complex on the Distribution of Calving Caribou. *Canadian Journal of Zoology*. 76:1425-1430.
- Northern Caribou Strategy. 2002. Cariboo Chilcotin Land Use Plan: Government of British Columbia, IAMC.
- Poole, K.G., D.C. Heard, and G. Mowat. 2000. Habitat Use by Woodland Caribou near Takla Lake in Central British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Zoology*. 78:1552-1561.

- Resources Information Standards Committee (RISC). 1999. British Columbia Wildlife Habitat Ratings Standards. Version 2.0. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Resource Inventory Branch. Victoria, BC, V.2. 111 pp.
- Roby, D.D. 1978. Behavioral Patterns of Barren-Ground Caribou of the Central Arctic Herd adjacent to the Trans-Alaska Oil Pipeline. M.Sc. Thesis. Univ. Alaska, Fairbanks.
- Rominger, E.M. and J.L. Oldemeyer. 1990. Early-winter Diet of Woodland Caribou in Relation to Snow Accumulation, Selkirk Mountains, BC, Canada. *Canadian Journal of Zoology*, 68: 2691-2694.
- Russell, D.E. and A.M. Martell. 1984. Winter Range Ecology of Caribou (*Rangifer tarandus*). In: *Northern Ecology and Resource Management*. R. Olson et al., (eds.) University of Alberta Press. Edmonton, AB.
- Seip, D. 1992. Factors limiting woodland caribou populations and their interrelationships with wolves and moose in southeastern British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Zoology* 70:1492-1503.
- Seip, D. 2002. Ecological relationships between threatened caribou herds and their habitat in the Central Rocky Mountains Ecoregion. FRBC Report. Prince George, BC, 15 pp.
- Seip, D. and E. Jones. 2010. Response of woodland caribou to partial retention logging of winter ranges attacked by mountain pine beetle. Annual Report. FSP Project #Y102010. BC Ministry of Forests, Prince George, BC, 27 p.
- Seip, D., C. Johnson, and G. Watts. 2007. Displacement of mountain caribou from winter habitat by snowmobiles. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 71(5):1539-1544.
- Seip, D.R. and D.B. Cichowski. 1996. Population Ecology of Caribou in British Columbia. *Rangifer* (Special Issue) 9: 73-80. Available at <http://www.ub.uit.no/baser/septentrio/index.php/rangifer/article/view/1223/1162>. Accessed January 2014.
- Simpson, K., D. Hamilton, and E. Terry. 1997. *Toward a Mountain Caribou Management Strategy for British Columbia - Habitat Requirements and Subpopulation Status*. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Wildlife Branch, Victoria, BC.
- Sleep, D. and C. Loehle. 2010. Validation of a demographic model for woodland caribou. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 74: 1508-1512.
- Smith, T.R. and D. Hebert. 1987. Caribou in the Itchas and Ilgachuz: a summary of harvest, inventory and other information. BC Ministry of Environment, Fish and Wildlife Branch, Williams Lake, BC. 88 p.

- Sorensen, T., McLoughlin, P.D. Hervieeux, D., Dzus, E., Nolan, J., Wynes, B. and S. Boutin. 2008. Determining Sustainable Levels of Cumulative Effects for Boreal Caribou. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 72: 900-905.
- Steenweg, R. 2011. Interactions of wolves, mountain caribou and an increased moose-hunting quota – primary-prey management as an approach to caribou recovery. MSc. Thesis. University of Northern British Columbia, Prince George, BC, 144 p.
- Storeheirer, P.V., S.D. Mathiesen, N.J.C. Tyler, I. Schjelderup, and M.A. Olsen. 2002. Utilization of Nitrogen and Mineral Rich Vascular Forage Plants by Reindeer in Winter. *Journal of Agricultural Science* 139:151-160.
- Stotyn, S. 2008. Ecological interactions of mountain caribou, wolves and moose in the North Columbia Mountains, British Columbia. MSc thesis. University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB.
- Swift, T.L. and S.J. Hannon. 2002. Critical threshold responses resident birds to forest cover in east-central Alberta. p.374 in T.S. Veeman, P.N. Duinker, B.J. Macnab, A.G. Coyne, K.M. Veeman, G.A. Binsted, and D. Korber. *Proceedings of the 2002 sustainable forest management network conference-advances in forest management: from knowledge to practice*, November 2002, Edmonton, AB.
- Swift, T.L. and S.J. Hannon. 2010. Critical thresholds associated with habitat loss: a review of the concepts, evidence, and applications. *Biol Rev Camb Philos Soc* 85(1):35-53.
- Villard, M.A., M.K. Trzcinski, and G. Merriam. 1999. Fragmentation effects on forest birds: relative influence of woodland cover and configuration on landscape occupancy. *Conservation Biology* 13(4): 774-783.
- Waterhouse, M. 2011. Lichen and vegetation response to mountain pine beetle damage in partial cuts and mature forests in the West Chilcotin in 2008. EP1208 File Report. Unpublished draft on file at BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations, Williams Lake, BC, 23 p.
- Whittington, J., M. Hebblewhite, N. DeCesare, L. Neufeld, M. Bradley, J. Wilmshurst, and M. Musiani. 2011. Caribou encounters with wolves increase near roads and trails: a time-to-event approach. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 48:1535-1542.
- Williamson-Ehlers, E. 2012. Impacts of industrial developments on the distribution and movement ecology of wolves (*Canis lupus*) and woodland caribou (*Rangifer tarandus caribou*) in the south Peace Region of British Columbia. MSc. thesis, University of Northern British Columbia, Prince George, BC, 163 p.
- Williamson-Ehlers, L., C. Johnson, and D. Seip. 2013. Behavioural responses, landscape change and habitat loss for woodland caribou (*Rangifer tarandus caribou*) across the Peace region of northeastern British Columbia. Prepared for the Habitat Conservation Trust Foundation, Victoria, BC, 58 p.

- Wilson, S. and D. Hamilton. 2003. Cumulative effects of habitat change and backcountry recreation on Mountain Caribou in the Central Selkirk Mountains. Prepared for: BC Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management, Nelson, BC., Canadian Mountain Holidays, Banff, AB, and Pope and Talbot Ltd., Nakusp, BC. 21 p.
- Yaremko, L. and R. Sulyma. 2005. Northern Caribou Ungulate Winter Range in the Vanderhoof Forest District (U-7-012). Report prepared for the BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC.
- Youds, J., H. Armleder, J. Young, N. Freeman, L. Roorda, M. Pelchat, L. Rankin, C. Bjorkman, M. Waterhouse, R. Wright, J. McLeod, and D. Peel. 2011. Caribou-Chilcoltin Land Use Plan Northern Caribou Strategy Review: Update #1. Report prepared for the Caribou Regional Management Team, Ministry of Forests, Land and Resource Operations and the Caribou Manager's Committee.
- Young, J. and L. Roorda. 1999. Towards integrated management solutions: the Itcha-Ilgachuz caribou project radio-telemetry year four progress report 1995-99. BC Ministry of Environment and Lands, Cariboo Region, Williams Lake, BC, 51 p.
- Young, J.A. and K.L. Shaw. 1998a. Towards Integrated Management Solutions: the Itcha-Ilgachuz Caribou Project Radio-telemetry Year Three Progress Report 1995-98. Wildlife Branch, BC Environment, Cariboo Region.
- Young, J.A. and K.L. Shaw. 1998b. Summary of the 1997 Post Calving Surveys and the 1998 Late Winter Survey for the Itcha, Ilgachuz and Rainbow Mountains, Cariboo Region Wildlife Branch, BC Ministry of Environment, Cariboo Region.

***Personal Communications***

- Freeman, N. 2013. Personal communication.
- Hebert, D. 2013. Personal communication.
- Lhoosk'a Dene. 2013. Personal communication with trapline holder.

***Section 5.4.12 – Grizzly Bear***

- Alberta Sustainable Resource Development. 2008. Alberta Grizzly Bear Recovery Plan 2008-2013. Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, Fish and Wildlife Division, Alberta Species at Risk Recovery Plan No. 15. Edmonton, AB. 68 pp.
- AMEC. 2013. Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat 2011–2013 Baseline Report. Prepared for New Gold Blackwater Gold Project.



- Andr n, H. 1994. Effects of Habitat Fragmentation on Birds and Mammals in Landscapes with Different Proportions of Suitable Habitat: A Review. *Oikos* 71:355-366.
- Apps, C., B. McLellan, J. Woods, and M. Proctor. 2004. Estimating grizzly bear distribution and abundance relative to habitat and human influence. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 68(1):138–152.
- Avison Management Services Ltd. 2012. Winter Habitat Survey for Black and Grizzly Bears. Report prepared for AMEC Environment and Infrastructure.
- BC Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2014. BC Species and Ecosystem Explorer. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed March 2014.
- BC Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects. Available at [http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO\\_Valued\\_Components\\_Guideline\\_2013\\_09\\_09.pdf](http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO_Valued_Components_Guideline_2013_09_09.pdf). Accessed October 2013.
- BC MFLNRO. 2014. Wildlife Management Areas. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/habitat/conservation-lands/wma/>. Accessed 2014.
- BC Ministry of Environment (BC MOE). 2012. Grizzly Bear Population Status in BC. Environmental Reporting BC. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/soe/archive/print\\_ver/plants-and-animals/2012\\_Grizzly\\_Bear\\_Population\\_Status\\_BC.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/soe/archive/print_ver/plants-and-animals/2012_Grizzly_Bear_Population_Status_BC.pdf).
- BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks. 1995. Grizzly Bear Conservation Strategy for British Columbia - Background Report. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Victoria, BC. 70pp.
- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands, and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2012. 2012-2014 Hunting and Trapping regulations synopsis. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/1214/docs/hunting\\_trapping\\_2012\\_2014.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/1214/docs/hunting_trapping_2012_2014.pdf), Accessed 2012.
- BC Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection (MWLAP). 2004. Grizzly Bear (*Ursus arctos*) in Accounts and Measures for Managing Identified Wildlife. Accounts and Measures for Managing Identified Wildlife. Version 2004. Biodiversity Branch, Identified Wildlife Management Strategy, Victoria, BC.
- Bennett, A.F. and L.A. Ford. 1997. Land Use, Habitat Change and the Conservation of Birds in Fragmented Rural Environments: a Landscape Perspective from the Northern Plains, Victoria, Australia. *Pacific Conservation Biology* 3: 244-61.

- Ciarniello, L.M., M.S. Boyce, D.C. Heard, and D.R. Seip. 2005. Denning Behavior and Den Site Selection of Grizzly Bears along the Parsnip River, British Columbia, Canada *Ursus* 16(1):47-58.
- Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). 2002. COSEWIC Assessment and Status Report on the Grizzly Bear *Ursus arctos horribilis* in Canada. Ottawa, ON.
- Cowan, I.M. and C.J. Guiguet. 1965. The Mammals of British Columbia. Handbook No.11, British Columbia Provincial Museum, Victoria, BC.
- Craighead, J.J. and L.A. Mitchell. 1982. Grizzly Bear. Pages 515-556 in J.A. Chapman and G.A. Feldhamer, eds. Wild Animals of North America: biology, management and economics. Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, MD.
- Fahrig, L. 1997. Relative Effects of Habitat Loss and Fragmentation on Species Extinction. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 61: 603-610.
- Fuhr, B.L. and D.A. Demarchi. 1990. A Methodology for Grizzly Bear Habitat Assessment in British Columbia. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC Wildlife Bulletin No. B-67. 28 pp.
- Gardner, C.L. 2010. Grizzly and Black Bear Distribution and Abundance Relative to the 2004 Wildfires in Eastern Interior Alaska: Possible Intensive Management Consequences. Federal Aid Annual Research Performance Report. AK Department of Fish and Game, Division of Wildlife Conservation, Juneau, AK.
- Gibeau, M.L.. 2000. A Conservation Biology Approach to Management of Grizzly Bears in Banff National Park. Ph.D Thesis. Resources and Environment Program, University of Calgary, Calgary, AB., 129 pp.
- Government of BC. 1996a. Wildlife Act. RSBC 1996, c. 488. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96488\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96488_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of BC. 1996b. Mines Act. RSBC 1996, c 296. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/Recon/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96293\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/Recon/document/ID/freeside/00_96293_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of BC. 2002. Forest and Range Practices Act. SBC 2002. c. 69. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02069\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02069_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of BC. 2002. Forest and Range Practices Act. SBC 2002. c. 69. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02069\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02069_01). Accessed March 2014.

- Government of Canada. 2002. Species at Risk Act. SC 2002, c. 29. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/S-15.3/page-1.html>. Accessed March 2014.
- Graham, K., J. Boulanger, J. Daval, and J. Stenhouse. 2010. Spatial and Temporal Use of Roads by Grizzly Bears in West-central Alberta. *Ursus* 21, 43-56.
- Gyug, L., T. Hamilton, and M. Austin. 2004. Grizzly Bear (*Ursus arctos*). Accounts and Measures for Managing Identified Wildlife – Accounts V. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/frpa/iwms/documents/Mammals/m\\_grizzlybear.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/frpa/iwms/documents/Mammals/m_grizzlybear.pdf). Accessed November 2013.
- Hamilton, A., and M. Austin. 2004. Grizzly Bear Harvest Management in BC: Background Report. Biodiversity Branch, BC Ministry of Water, Lands and Air Protection, Victoria, BC.
- Hatler, D.F., D. Nagorsen, and A.M. Beal. 2008. Carnivores of British Columbia. Royal BC Museum Handbook. Volume 5. Mammals of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.
- Hilderbrand, G.V., C.C. Schwartz, C.T. Robbins, M.E. Jacoby, T.A. Hanley, S.M. Arthur and C. Servheen. 1999. The importance of meat, particularly salmon, to body size, population productivity, and conservation of North American Brown Bears. *Canadian Journal of Zoology* 77:132-38.
- Himmer, S. and M. Gallagher. 1995. Tweedsmuir Grizzly Bear Study Final Report. Report submitted to BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Victoria, BC. 108 pp.
- Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed March 2014.
- LeFranc, Jr., M.N., M.B. Moss, K.A. Patnode, and W.C. Sugg III (editors). 1987. Grizzly Bear Compendium. Interagency Grizzly Bear Committee, Bozeman, MT. 540pp.
- Macey, A. 1979. As cited in Jonkel, C.J. 1987. Brown Bear. In M. Novak, J.A. Baker, M.E. Obbard, and B. Malloch (eds.). *Wild Furbearer Management and Conservation in North America*. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Queen's Printer for Ontario.
- MacHutchon, A.G., S. Himmer, and C. Bryde. 1993. Khutzeymateen Valley Grizzly Bear Study Final Report. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Wildlife Report No. R-25, BC Ministry of Forests, Wildlife Habitat Research Report. No. WHR. 105pp.
- Mattson, D. and J. Henry. 1987. Team Report Spring Grizzly Bear Use of Ungulate Carcasses in the Firehole River Drainage. Pages 63-72 in R. Knight, M. Blanchard, and D. Mattson. *Yellowstone Grizzly Bear Investigation – Annual Report of the Interagency Study Team*

1986. Interagency Grizzly Bear Study Team, U.S. Department of Interior, National Park Service.
- Mattson, D., Knight, R., and B. Blanchard. 1987. The Effects of Development and Primary Roads on Grizzly Bear Habitat in Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming. International Conference on Bear Research and Management, 7:259-73.
- McLellan, B.N. 1990. Relationships between human industrial activity and Grizzly Bears. International Conference on Bear Research and Management 8:57-64.
- McLellan, B.N. and D.M. Shackleton. 1988. Grizzly Bears and Resource Extraction Industries: Effects of Roads on Behaviour, Habitat Use and Demography. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 25:451-460.
- McLellan, B.N. and R.D. Mace. 1985. Behaviour of grizzly bears in response to roads, seismic activity and people. Canadian Border Grizzly Project Report. University of British Columbia, Vancouver.
- McNamee, T. 1997. *The Grizzly Bear*. New York: The Lyons Press, 1997.
- Nietfeld, M., J. Wilk, K. Woolnough and B Hoskin. 1985. Wildlife Habitat Requirement Summaries for Selected Wildlife Species in Alberta. Wildlife Resource Inventory Unit, Alberta Energy and Natural Resources. ENR Technical Report Number T/73.
- North Cascades Grizzly Bear Recovery Team. 2004. Recovery Plan for Grizzly Bears in the North Cascades of British Columbia. June 1, 2004. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC.
- Resources Information Standards Committee (RISC). 1999. British Columbia Wildlife Habitat Ratings Standards. Version 2.0. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Victoria, BC. 97 pp.
- Roever, C., M. Boyce, G. Stenhouse. 2010. Grizzly Bear Movements Relative to Roads: Application of Step Selection Functions. *Ecography* 33, 1113-1122.
- Simpson, K. 1987. Impacts of a Hydro-Electric Reservoir on populations of Caribou and Grizzly Bear in Southern BC. Wildlife Working Report WR-24, BC Ministry of Environment and Parks, Nelson, BC.
- Stevens, V. and S. Lofts. 1988. Species Notes for Mammals. Volume 1 in A.P. Harcombe (tech. ed.) Wildlife Habitat Handbooks for the Southern Interior Ecoprovince. BC Ministry of Environment and BC Ministry of Forests, Victoria, BC. 180 pp.
- Swift, T.L. and S.J. Hannon. 2010. Critical thresholds associated with habitat loss: a review of the concepts, evidence, and applications. *Biological Reviews* 85:35-53.

United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 1993. Grizzly Bear Recovery Plan. US Department of Interior, Missoula, MT.

Villard M-A, M.K. Trzcinski, and G. Merriam. 1999. Fragmentation Effects on Forest Birds: Relative Influence of Woodland Cover and Configuration on Landscape Occupancy. *Conservation Biology*. 13:774–83.

Zielke, K., B. Bancroft, K. Byrne, and S. Mitchell. 2010. BCTC Windthrow Manual: A Compendium of Information and Tools for Understanding, Predicting and Managing Windthrow on the BC Coast. Report prepared for BC Timber Sales, BC Forest Service.

***Personal Communications***

Lhoosk'a Dene. 2013. Personal communication with trapholder.

***Section 5.4.13 – Furbearers***

AMEC. 2013. Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat 2011–2013 Baseline Report. Prepared for New Gold Blackwater Gold Project.

Andrén, H. 1994. Effects of Habitat Fragmentation on Birds and Mammals in Landscapes with Different Proportions of Suitable Habitat: A Review. *Oikos* 71:355-366.

Baker, J.M. 1992. Habitat Use and Spatial Organization of Pine Marten on Southern Vancouver Island, British Columbia. MSc. Thesis, Simon Fraser University, Burnaby, BC.

BC MFLNRO. 2014. Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs). Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>. Accessed February 2014.

Bennett, A.F. and L.A. Ford, 1997. Land Use, Habitat Change and the Conservation of Birds in Fragmented Rural Environments: a Landscape Perspective from the Northern Plains, Victoria, Australia. *Pacific Conservation Biology* 3: 244-61.

British Columbia Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2014. BC Species and Ecosystem Explorer. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed March 2014.

British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects. Available at [http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO\\_Valued\\_Components\\_Guideline\\_2013\\_09\\_09.pdf](http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO_Valued_Components_Guideline_2013_09_09.pdf). Accessed October 2013.

British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands, and Natural Resources Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2012. 2012-2014 Hunting and Trapping regulations synopsis. Available at

- [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/1214/docs/hunting\\_trapping\\_2012\\_2014.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/1214/docs/hunting_trapping_2012_2014.pdf). Accessed 2012.
- Buskirk, S.W. and L.F. Ruggiero. 1994. American marten. In: *The Scientific Basis for Conserving Forest Carnivores: American marten, Fisher, Lynx and Wolverine in the Western United States*.
- Coffin, K., C. Fager, Q. Kujala, L. Irby, and R. Douglass. 2002. Winter Ecology of American Marten in Southwestern Montana. *Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Wildlife Division, Technical Bulletin*, Helena, MT.
- Fahrig L. 1997. Relative effects of habitat loss and fragmentation on population extinction. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 61:603–610.
- Gibbs, J. 1998. Amphibian movements in response to forest edges, roads, and streambeds in southern New England. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 62:584–58.
- Government of BC. 1996a. *Wildlife Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 488. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96488\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96488_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of BC. 1996b. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 293. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96293\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96293_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of BC. 2002. *Forest and Range Practices Act*. SBC 2002. c. 69. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02069\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02069_01). Accessed March 2014.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/S-15.3/page-1.html>. Accessed March 2014.
- Hatler, D.F., D.W. Nagorsen, and A.M. Beal. 2008. Carnivores of British Columbia. Volume 5: Mammals of British Columbia, Royal British Columbia Museum, Victoria, BC.
- Homan, R., B. Windmiller, and J. Reed. 2004. Critical Thresholds Associated with Habitat Loss for Two Vernal Pool-breeding Amphibians. *Ecological Applications*. 14(5):1547-1553.
- Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed March 2014.
- Meidinger, D. and J. Pojar. 1991. *Ecosystems of British Columbia*. BC Ministry of Forests. IV. Series: Special report series. No. 6.



- Proulx, G. 2001. Characteristics and Management of American Marten Habitat at Stand and Landscape Levels. Alpha Wildlife Research & Management Ltd. report submitted to BC Ministry of Forests, Prince George Forest District. 72 pages.
- Proulx, G. 2006. Wolverine, Marten and Fisher Habitat Use in Supply Block F within the PGTSA. Report prepared for Canadian Forest Products Ltd., Prince George, BC.
- Resources Information Standards Committee (RISC). 1998. Inventory Methods for Marten and Weasels. Prepared by BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks Resources Inventory Branch for the Terrestrial Ecosystems Task Force Resources Inventory Committee (Version 2.0).
- RISC. 1999. British Columbia Wildlife Habitat Ratings Standards. Version 2.0. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Victoria, BC. 97 pp.
- Swift, T.L. and S.J. Hannon. 2010. Critical thresholds associated with habitat loss: a review of the concepts, evidence, and applications. *Biological Reviews* 85:35-53.
- Thompson, I.D. and A.S. Harestad. 1994. Effects of logging on American martens with models for habitat management. Pages 355-367 in Buskirk S.W., A.S. Harestad, M.G. Raphael, and R.A. Powell, eds. *Martens, sables, and fishers: biology and conservation*. Cornell University Press, Ithaca, NY.
- Villard M-A, M.K. Trzcinski, and G. Merriam. 1999. Fragmentation Effects on Forest Birds: Relative Influence of Woodland Cover and Configuration on Landscape Occupancy. *Conservation Biology*. 13:774–83.
- Zielke, K., B. Bancroft, K. Byrne, and S. Mitchell. 2010. BCTC Windthrow Manual: A Compendium of Information and Tools for Understanding, Predicting and Managing Windthrow on the BC Coast. Report prepared for BC Timber Sales, BC Forest Service.

***Personal Communications***

- Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation and Saik'uz First Nation. 2013. Interview with members.
- Trapline TR0711T007. 2013. Interview with owners of trapline.
- Trapline TR0712T036. 2013. Interview with owner of trapline.
- Trapline TR0712T039. 2013. Interview with owner of trapline.

**Section 5.4.14 – Bats**

- Adams, A.M., M.K. Jantzen, R.M. Hamilton, and M. Brockette Fenton. 2012. Do You Hear What I Hear? Implications of Detector Selection for Acoustic Monitoring of Bats. *Methods in Ecology and Evolution*. 3:992-998.
- AMEC. 2013. Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat 2011–2013 Baseline Report. Report prepared for New Gold Blackwater Gold Project.
- Andrén, H. 1994. Effects of Habitat Fragmentation on Birds and Mammals in Landscapes with Different Proportions of Suitable Habitat: A Review. *Oikos* 71:355-366.
- Bennett, A.F. and L.A. Ford. 1997. Land Use, Habitat Change and the Conservation of Birds in Fragmented Rural Environments: a Landscape Perspective from the Northern Plains, Victoria, Australia. *Pacific Conservation Biology* 3: 244-61.
- British Columbia Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2014. BC Species and Ecosystem Explorer. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed 2014.
- British Columbia Environmental Effects Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects. Available at [http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO\\_Valued\\_Components\\_Guideline\\_2013\\_09\\_09.pdf](http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO_Valued_Components_Guideline_2013_09_09.pdf) Accessed October 2013.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands, and Natural Resources Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2014. Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs). Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>. Accessed February 2014.
- Broders, H., G. Forbes, S. Woodley, and I. Thompson. 2006. Range Extent and Stand Selection for Roosting and Foraging in Forest-dwelling Northern Long-eared Bats and Little Brown Bats in the Greater Fundy Ecosystem, New Brunswick. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 70: 1174-1184.
- Canadian Wildlife Federation. 2014. Updated white-nose syndrome map. Available at <http://blog.cwf-fcf.org/?p=716> Accessed February 2014.
- Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). 2014. COSEWIC Wildlife Species Database Search. Available at [http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/eng/sct5/index\\_e.cfm](http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/eng/sct5/index_e.cfm). Accessed February 2014.
- Fahrig, L. 1997. Relative Effects of Habitat Loss and Fragmentation on Species Extinction. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 61: 603-610.
- Government of British Columbia. 1996. Wildlife Act. RSBC 1996, c. 488.

- Government of British Columbia. 2002. Forest and Range Practices Act. SBC 2002, c. 69.
- Government of Canada. 2002. Species at Risk Act. SC 2002, c. 29.
- Government of Canada. 2013. Emergency Assessment Concludes that Three Bat Species are Endangered in Canada. Press Release. Available at [http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/eng/sct7/Bat\\_Emergency\\_Assessment\\_Press\\_Release\\_e.cfm](http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/eng/sct7/Bat_Emergency_Assessment_Press_Release_e.cfm). Accessed November 2013.
- Homan, R., B. Windmiller, and J. Reed. 2004. Critical Thresholds Associated with Habitat Loss for Two Vernal Pool-breeding Amphibians. *Ecological Applications*. 14(5):1547-1553.
- Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed March 2014.
- Kalcounis, M., K. Hobson, R. Brigham, and K. Hecker. 1999. Bat Activity in the Boreal Forest: Importance of Stand Type and Vertical Strata. *Journal of Mammalogy* 80: 673-682.
- Resources Information Standards Committee (RISC). 1998. Inventory Methods for Bats. Prepared by BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks Resources Inventory Branch for the Terrestrial Ecosystems Task Force Resources Inventory Committee. Version 2.0.
- RISC. 1999. British Columbia Wildlife Habitat Rating Standards. Version 2.0. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks.
- Swift, T.L. and S.J. Hannon. 2010. Critical Thresholds Associated with Habitat Loss: a Review of the Concepts, Evidence, and Applications. *Biological Reviews* 85:35-53.
- Thomas, D. 1988. The Distribution of Bats in Different Ages of Douglas-Fir Forests. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 52: 619-626.
- Villard M-A, M.K. Trzcinski, and G. Merriam. 1999. Fragmentation Effects on Forest Birds: Relative Influence of Woodland Cover and Configuration on Landscape Occupancy. *Conservation Biology*. 13:774–83.
- White-nose Syndrome Decontamination Team. 2012. National White-nose Syndrome Decontamination Protocol Version 06.25.2012. Disease Management Working Group.

**Section 5.4.15 – Invertebrates**

- AMEC. 2013. Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat 2011–2013 Baseline Report. Prepared for New Gold Blackwater Gold Project.

- Andrén, H. 1994. Effects of Habitat Fragmentation on Birds and Mammals in Landscapes with Different Proportions of Suitable Habitat: A Review. *Oikos* 71:355-366
- BC Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2013. Species Summary: *Cordulia shurtleffii*. BC Ministry of Environment. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed August 28, 2013.
- BC Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects. Available at [http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO\\_Valued\\_Components\\_Guideline\\_2013\\_09\\_09.pdf](http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/EAO_Valued_Components_Guideline_2013_09_09.pdf) Accessed October 2013.
- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2014. Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs). Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>. Accessed February 2014.
- Bennett, A.F. and L.A. Ford. 1997. Land Use, Habitat Change and the Conservation of Birds in Fragmented Rural Environments: a Landscape Perspective from the Northern Plains, Victoria, Australia. *Pacific Conservation Biology* 3: 244-61.
- Cannings, R.A. 2002. Introducing the dragonflies of British Columbia and the Yukon. Victoria, BC: Royal British Columbia Museum. 96 pp.
- Cannings, R.A. and K.M. Stuart. 1977. The Dragonflies of British Columbia. British Columbia Provincial Museum Handbook No. 35, first ed., Victoria, BC: Royal British Columbia Museum.
- Ecofor. 2013. Blackwater Gold Environmental Assessment Invertebrate Inventory. Report prepared for AMEC Environment and Infrastructure. 31 pp.
- Fahrig, L. 1997. Relative Effects of Habitat Loss and Fragmentation on Species Extinction. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 61: 603-610.
- GeoBC. 2014. Freshwater Atlas. Available at: <ftp://ftp.geobc.gov.bc.ca/pub/outgoing/FreshWaterAtlasDocuments/>. Accessed February 2014.
- Gibbs, J. 1998. Amphibian movements in response to forest edges, roads, and streambeds in southern New England. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 62:584–58.
- Guppy, C.S. 2013. EcoFor Natural and Cultural Resource Consultants. Whitehorse, YT. Personal communication.
- Guppy, C.S. and J.H. Shepard. 2001. Butterflies of British Columbia. UBC Press and Royal British Columbia Museum: Victoria, BC. 414 pp.

Homan, R., B. Windmiller, and J. Reed. 2004. Critical Thresholds Associated with Habitat Loss for Two Vernal Pool-breeding Amphibians. *Ecological Applications*. 14(5):1547-1553.

Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed March 2014.

Klinkenberg, B. (Editor). 2012. *E-Fauna BC: Electronic Atlas of the Fauna of British Columbia* [efauna.bc.ca]. Lab for Advanced Spatial Analysis, Department of Geography, University of British Columbia, Vancouver. Accessed August 28, 2013.

Layberry, R.A., P.W. Hall, and J.D. LaFontaine. 1998. *The butterflies of Canada*. University of Toronto Press. 280 pp. + colour plates.

Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks. 1998. Inventory Methods for Terrestrial Arthropods. Standards for Components of British Columbia's Biodiversity No. 40. Victoria, BC: Resources Inventory Committee, Province of British Columbia. 42 pp.

Pohl, G.R., G.G. Anweiler, B.C. Schmidt, and N.G. Kondla. 2010. An Annotated List of the Lepidoptera of Alberta, Canada. *ZooKeys* 38: 549 pp.

Resources Information Standards Committee (RISC). 1999. British Columbia Wildlife Habitat Ratings Standards. Version 2.0. BC Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Victoria, BC. 97 pp.

Swift, T.L., and S.J. Hannon. 2010. Critical thresholds associated with habitat loss: a review of the concepts, evidence, and applications. *Biological Reviews* 85:35-53.

Villard M-A, M.K. Trzcinski, and G. Merriam. 1999. Fragmentation Effects on Forest Birds: Relative Influence of Woodland Cover and Configuration on Landscape Occupancy. *Conservation Biology*. 13:774–83.

### ***Section 5.5 – Summary of Assessment of Environmental Effects***

AMEC. 2013. Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat 2011–2013 Baseline Report. Prepared for New Gold Blackwater Gold Project.

Azimuth Consulting Group Partnership (Azimuth). 2012. Site C Clean Energy Project. Volume 2, Appendix J, Mercury Technical Reports, Part 1 Mercury Technical Synthesis Report. Azimuth, Vancouver, for British Columbia (BC) Hydro Power and Authority.

Barringer, L.E., D.F. Tomback, M.B. Wunder, and S.T. McKinney. 2012. "Whitebark Pine Stand Condition, Tree Abundance, and Cone Production as Predictors of Visitation by Clark's Nutcracker." *PLoS ONE* 7(5): e37663. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0037663.

- BC CDC. 2014. BC Species and Ecosystem Explorer. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed 2014.
- BC Hydro. 2003. Approved Work Practices for Managing Riparian Vegetation. A Guide to Incorporating Riparian Environmental Concerns into the Management of Vegetation in BC Hydro's Transmission and Distribution Corridors. BC Hydro, DFO and MWLAP.
- BC MFLNRO. 2014. Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs). Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>. Accessed February 2014.
- British Columbia Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2013. Species Summary: *Cordulia shurtleffii*. BC Ministry of Environment. Available at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed August 28, 2013.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2012. Fish-stream crossing guidebook. Forest Practices Code of British Columbia guidebook. Province of British Columbia. Victoria, BC.
- Clason, A. 2013. A Tactical Plan for the Recovery of Whitebark Pine in the Omineca Region. Bulkley Valley Research Centre. Available at [http://www.whitebarkpine.ca/uploads/4/4/1/8/4418310/wbp\\_management\\_in\\_omineca.pdf](http://www.whitebarkpine.ca/uploads/4/4/1/8/4418310/wbp_management_in_omineca.pdf). Accessed February 3, 2014.
- Clason, A., and R. Moody. 2013. New Gold Blackwater Whitebark Pine Management Plan, Update January 2013. Prepared by Alana Clason, Bulkley Valley Research Centre, and Randy Moody Keefer Ecological Services Ltd. On file at AMEC, Burnaby, BC.
- Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). 2014. COSEWIC Wildlife Species Database Search. Available at [http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/eng/sct5/index\\_e.cfm](http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/eng/sct5/index_e.cfm). Accessed February 2014.
- Environment Canada. 2009. Environmental Code of Practice for Metal Mines. Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/lcpe-cepa/default.asp?lang=En&n=CBE3CD59-1>. Accessed February 2014.
- Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 2013. Measures to avoid causing harm to fish and fish habitat. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/measures-mesures/index-eng.html>. Accessed 19 December 2013.
- Government of BC. 2002b. *Forests and Range Practices Act*. SBC 2002, c. 69.
- Government of Canada. 2002. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29.
- Hamaguchi, B.A., H.M. Larratt, & M. Freberg. 2008. The development of an aquatic ecosystem in Trojan Tailings Pond, Highland Valley Copper. British Columbia Mine Reclamation



- Symposium. University of British Columbia. Available at <https://circle.ubc.ca/handle/2429/8290>. Accessed October 2013.
- Hutchins, H.E., and R.M. Lanner. 1982. "The Central Role of Clark's Nutcracker in the Dispersal and Establishment of Whitebark Pine." *Oecologica (Berl)* 55: 192–201.
- Keane, R.E., D.F. Tomback, M.P. Murray, and C.M. Smith, eds. 2011. The future of high-elevation, five-needle white pines in Western North America: Proceedings of the High Five Symposium. 28-30 June 2010; Missoula, MT. Proceedings RMRS-P-63. Fort Collins, CO: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station. Available at [http://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs\\_p063.html](http://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs_p063.html). Accessed 2013.
- Knight Piésold. November 2013. Mine Waste and Water Management Design Report, November 22, 2013, VA101-457/6-11.
- McKinney, S.T., C.E. Fiedler, and D.F. Tomback. 2009. "Invasive pathogen threatens bird-pine mutualism: implications for sustaining a high-elevation ecosystem." *Ecological Applications* 19: 597–607. doi: 10.1890/08-0151.1
- Schwandt, J.W., I.B. Lockman, J.T. Kliejunas, and J.A. Muir. 2010. "Current health issues and management strategies for white pines in the western United States and Canada." *Forest Pathology* 40: 226–250.
- Tomback, D. et al., 2005. Draft protocol for monitoring Clark's Nutcracker populations. Prepared by Whitebark Pine Ecosystem Foundation.
- Tomback, D.F. 1998. Clark's Nutcracker (*Nucifraga columbiana*). Species Account Number 331. The Birds of North America (A. Poole, Ed.). Ithaca, NY: Cornell Laboratory of Ornithology; The Birds of North America. Available at <http://bna.birds.cornell.edu/bna/>. Accessed 28 March 2013.
- Zielke, K., B. Bancroft, K. Byrne, and S. Mitchell. 2010. BCTC Windthrow Manual: A Compendium of Information and Tools for Understanding, Predicting and Managing Windthrow on the BC Coast. Report prepared for BC Timber Sales, BC Forest Service.

### **Section 6 – Assessment of Potential Economic Effects**

- Agency. 2013. Environmental Impact Statement Guidelines. Guidelines for the Preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement for an Environmental Assessment pursuant to the Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012. Prepared for New Gold Inc. for the Blackwater Gold Project. February 2013.
- AMEC. 2012. New Gold Inc. Blackwater Project, British Columbia, Preliminary Economic Assessment Report.

Australian and New Zealand Minerals and Energy Council. 2000. Strategic Framework for Mine Closure. Retrieved from <http://www.mirmgate.com/index.php?coreId=180>; accessed October 2013.

BC MCSCD (British Columbia Ministry of Community, Sport and Cultural Development). 2012. Local government statistics 2012. Available at [http://www.cscd.gov.bc.ca/lgd/infra/statistics\\_index.htm](http://www.cscd.gov.bc.ca/lgd/infra/statistics_index.htm). Accessed January 2013.

BC Ministry of Community, Sport and Cultural Development. 2012. Local Government Statistics. Retrieved from [http://www.cscd.gov.bc.ca/lgd/infra/statistics\\_index.htm](http://www.cscd.gov.bc.ca/lgd/infra/statistics_index.htm); accessed October 2013.

BC Ministry of Finance. 2013. Budget and Fiscal Plan 2013/14 – 2015/16 (June Update). Retrieved from [http://bcbudget.gov.bc.ca/2013\\_June\\_Update/bfp/2013\\_June\\_Budget\\_Fiscal\\_Plan.pdf](http://bcbudget.gov.bc.ca/2013_June_Update/bfp/2013_June_Budget_Fiscal_Plan.pdf)

BC Ministry of Finance. 2013a. Office of the Comptroller General – Public Accounts 2012–2013. Financial Statement Discussion and Analysis (Unaudited). Retrieved from [http://www.fin.gov.bc.ca/ocg/pa/12\\_13/Pa12\\_13.htm](http://www.fin.gov.bc.ca/ocg/pa/12_13/Pa12_13.htm); accessed October 2013.

BC Ministry of Finance. 2013b. Budget and Fiscal Plan 2013/14 – 2015/16 (June Update). Retrieved from [http://bcbudget.gov.bc.ca/2013\\_June\\_Update/bfp/2013\\_June\\_Budget\\_Fiscal\\_Plan.pdf](http://bcbudget.gov.bc.ca/2013_June_Update/bfp/2013_June_Budget_Fiscal_Plan.pdf)

BC Ministry of Jobs, Tourism and Skills Training. 2012. Major Projects Inventory, March 2013. Retrieved from [http://www.jtst.gov.bc.ca/ministry/major\\_projects\\_inventory/index.htm](http://www.jtst.gov.bc.ca/ministry/major_projects_inventory/index.htm); accessed July 2013.

BC Stats, 2011. Labour force statistics: December 2011. Available at <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/pubs/lfs/lfsdata.pdf>; accessed 2012.

BC Stats. 2011. BC Taxation Statistics. Available at <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/data/dd/income.asp>. Accessed 2012.

BC Stats. 2012. The British Columbia Economic Accounts. Economic Accounts Data, 2007–2011. Retrieved from <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/StatisticsBySubject/Economy/EconomicAccounts.aspx>; accessed October 2013.

BC Stats. 2013a. Labour Force Statistics. August 2013. Retrieved from <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/StatisticsBySubject/LabourIncome/EmploymentUnemployment.asp>; accessed October 2013.

BC Stats. 2013b. BC Input-Output Model Report: Blackwater Mine. September 2013

BC Stats. 2013b. BC Input-Output Model Report: Blackwater Mine. September 2013

- BC Works. 2011. British Columbian Labour Market Outlook 2010–2020. Retrieved from <http://www.workbc.ca/Statistics/Labour-Market/Pages/Labour-Market.aspx>; accessed October 2013.
- BC Works. 2011. British Columbian Labour Market Outlook 2010–2020. Retrieved from <http://www.workbc.ca/Statistics/Labour-Market/Pages/Labour-Market.aspx>; accessed October 2013.
- Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects, 9 September 2013.
- Horne, G. 2009. British Columbia Local Area Dependencies: 2006. Retrieved from <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/StatisticsBySubject/Economy/BCInputOutputModel.asp>; accessed 2012.
- International Institute for Environment and Development, (2002) Research on Mine Closure Policy. Available at <http://pubs.iied.org/pdfs/G00541.pdf>; accessed October 2013.
- Municipal Finance Authority of BC (MFA). 2013. Who is the Municipal Finance Authority? Retrieved from <http://mfa.bc.ca/about-us>; accessed October 2013.
- New Gold Inc. 2012. 2012 Sustainability Report Summary, Growing Responsibly. Retrieved from <http://www.newgold.com/corporate-responsibility/sustainability-report/default.aspx>; accessed October 2013.
- New Gold Inc. 2013. Health, Safety, Environment and Corporate Social Responsibility (“HSE CSR”) Policy. Retrieved from <http://www.newgold.com/company/corporate-governance/default.aspx>; accessed October 2013.
- Statistics Canada. 2007. 2006 Census of Canada. Retrieved from <http://www12.statcan.ca/census-recensement/2006/dp-pd/prof/92-591/index.cfm?Lang=E>; accessed May 2012.
- Statistics Canada. 2008. Industry - North American Industry Classification System 2002 (23), Occupation - National Occupational Classification for Statistics 2006 (60), Class of Worker (6) and Sex (3) for the Labour Force 15 Years and Over of Canada, Provinces, Territories, Census Divisions and Census Subdivisions, 2006 Census - 20% Sample Data. Retrieved from <http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2006/dp-pd/tbt/Rp-eng.cfm?TABID=1&LANG=E&APATH=3&DETAIL=0&DIM=0&FL=A&FREE=0&GC=0&GK=0&GRP=1&PID=92117&PRID=0&PTYPE=88971,97154&S=0&SHOWALL=0&SUB=742&Temporal=2006&THEME=74&VID=0&VNAMEE=&VNAMEF=>; accessed October 2012.

Statistics Canada. 2012. Gross domestic product, expenditure-based, by province and territory. CANSIM, table 384-0038. Retrieved from <http://www.statcan.gc.ca/tables-tableaux/sum-som/l01/cst01/econ15-eng.htm>; accessed October 2013.

Statistics Canada. 2013. Business Register Statistics, December 2012. Data purchased from Statistics Canada. Available at [http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb-bmdi/document/1105\\_D2\\_T1\\_V3-eng.htm](http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb-bmdi/document/1105_D2_T1_V3-eng.htm). Accessed July 2013.

Statistics Canada. 2013a. 2011 National Household Survey Profile. Statistics Canada Catalogue no. 99-004-XWE. Ottawa. Retrieved from <http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2011/dp-pd/prof/index.cfm?Lang=E>; accessed July 2013.

Statistics Canada. 2013b. Business Register Statistics, December 2012. Data purchased from Statistics Canada. Retrieved from [http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb-bmdi/document/1105\\_D2\\_T1\\_V3-eng.htm](http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb-bmdi/document/1105_D2_T1_V3-eng.htm); accessed November 2013.

### ***Interviews***

Lytel, L. Economic Development Officer, Village of Fraser Lake. Telephone Interview. July 2013.

Romeo, M. Visitor Services Coordinator, Fort St. James Chamber of Commerce. Telephone Interview. July 2013

Siemens, S. Services Coordinator, Vanderhoof Chamber of Commerce. Telephone interview. July 2013.

Wall, S. Manager, Burns Lake Chamber of Commerce. Telephone interview. July 2013.

### ***Section 7 – Assessment of Potential Social Effects***

A History of the Battle against the Mountain Pine Beetle, 2000–2012b. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain\\_pine\\_beetle/Pine%20Beetle%20Response%20Brief%20History%20May%2023%202012.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain_pine_beetle/Pine%20Beetle%20Response%20Brief%20History%20May%2023%202012.pdf). Accessed April 2013.

AANDC (Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada). 2012. Measuring well-being: the community well-being (CWB) index. Available at <http://www.aadnc-aandc.gc.ca/eng/1100100016579>. Accessed February 2013.

Aeronigma Solutions. 2012. Blackwater Air Services/Study, December 2012.

Agency. 2013. Environmental Impact Statement Guidelines. Guidelines for the Preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement for an Environmental Assessment pursuant to the Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012. Prepared for New Gold Inc. for the Blackwater Gold Project. February 2013.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Allnorth Consultants Limited. 2012. Blackwater Project North Haul Route Analysis, April 2012.
- Allnorth Consultants Limited. 2012. Blackwater Traffic Volumes Memo, May 29, 2012.
- Allnorth Consultants Limited. 2012. Design Basis Memorandum. Kluskus-Ootsa FSR.
- Allnorth Consultants Limited. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project; Airport Location Report, January 2013.
- AMEC E&I. 2013. Blackwater Gold Project Draft Transportation and Access Management Plan, June 2013.
- AMEC E&I. 2013. Draft - Site Assessment of Potential Locations for an Offsite Transfer Facility, March 2013.
- AMEC E&I. 2013. Transportation Route Survey for the Transport of Cyanide to the Mine, July 2013.
- AMEC Environment and Infrastructure. 2013. Draft Application Information Requirements for New Gold Inc. (Version B).
- AMEC Environment and Infrastructure. 2013. Draft Application Information Requirements for New Gold Inc. (Version B).
- AMEC M&M. 2012. Construction Execution Plan.
- AMEC M&M. 2012. New Gold Inc. Blackwater Project Preliminary Logistics Study, November 2012.
- AMEC, 2012. Blackwater Gold Project Description. October 2012.
- Andrew Leach & Associates. 2008. Carrier Chilcotin Tribal Council: Economic Development Strategy. Available at <http://www.c-cbac.com>. Accessed February 2013.
- Avison Management Services Ltd., 2005. Vanderhoof LRMP Access Management Study, March 2005. Available at [http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/news/files/reports/Vanderhoof\\_LRMP\\_access\\_mgmt\\_survey\\_Mar2005.pdf](http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/news/files/reports/Vanderhoof_LRMP_access_mgmt_survey_Mar2005.pdf). Accessed May 2013.
- Batnuni Lake, 2013. Batnuni Lake Guides and Outfitters. Available at <http://www.batnunilake.com/index.php>. Accessed April 2013.
- BC Cable. 2012. Available at <http://www.omineca.com/>. Accessed August 2012.
- BC Hydro Power and Authority. 2013. Site C Clean Energy Project, Volume 5 Appendix A17, Part 1. Community Summary: Métis Nation of British Columbia. Final Report.

- BC MFLNRO 2013d. Provincial Map of Tree Farm Licences, Timber Supply Areas, Regions and Districts. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hth/timber-tenures/provincial-map.htm>. Accessed April 2013.
- BC MFLNRO, 2012a. 2012–2014 Hunting and Trapping Regulations Synopsis. Updated March 2013. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/>. Accessed April 2013.
- BC MFLNRO, 2013a. Range Program – Grazing Lease Administration. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hra/Legislation/grazing.htm>. Accessed May 2013.
- BC MFLNRO, 2013b. Water Protection & Sustainability Branch. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wsd/water\\_rights/licence\\_application/index.html](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wsd/water_rights/licence_application/index.html). Accessed May 2013.
- BC MFLNRO, 2013c. Trapping in British Columbia. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/trapping/>. Accessed April 2013.
- BC MFLNRO, 2013e. Range Program – Grazing Lease Administration. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hra/Legislation/grazing.htm>. Accessed May 2013.
- BC MFLNRO, 2013f. Range Program – Grazing Lease Administration. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hra/Legislation/grazing.htm>. Accessed May 2013.
- BC MFLNRO, 2013h. Water Protection & Sustainability Branch. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wsd/water\\_rights/licence\\_application/index.html](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wsd/water_rights/licence_application/index.html). Accessed May 2013.
- BC MFLNRO, 2013i. Water Protection & Sustainability Branch. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wsd/water\\_rights/licence\\_application/index.html](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wsd/water_rights/licence_application/index.html). Accessed May 2013.
- BC MFLNRO, 2013j. 2013–2015 BC Freshwater Fishing Regulation Synopsis. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/fish/regulations/docs/1315/fishing\\_synopsis\\_2013-15.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/fish/regulations/docs/1315/fishing_synopsis_2013-15.pdf). Accessed April 2013.
- BC MFLNRO. 2010. Establishment of Scenic Areas and Visual Quality Objectives (VQOs) for the Vanderhoof Forest District (VFD). 2012. Objectives for Visual Quality ver: 4.0. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/ftp/DVA/external!/publish/Scenic%20Areas-VQOs\\_DVA/sept1808order.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/ftp/DVA/external!/publish/Scenic%20Areas-VQOs_DVA/sept1808order.pdf). Accessed 16 August 2013.
- BC MFLNRO. 2010. Establishment of Scenic Areas and Visual Quality Objectives (VQOs) for the Vanderhoof Forest District (VFD). 2012. Objectives for Visual Quality ver: 4.0. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/ftp/DVA/external!/publish/Scenic%20Areas-VQOs\\_DVA/sept1808order.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/ftp/DVA/external!/publish/Scenic%20Areas-VQOs_DVA/sept1808order.pdf). Accessed 16 August 2013.



- BC MFLNRO. 2012. Vanderhoof Forest District Land and Resource Management Plan. Available at [http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/sites/default/files/resources/public/PDF/LRMP/Vanderhoof\\_LRMP.pdf](http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/sites/default/files/resources/public/PDF/LRMP/Vanderhoof_LRMP.pdf). Accessed 16 August 2013.
- BC MFLNRO. 2012. Vanderhoof Forest District Land and Resource Management Plan. Available at [http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/sites/default/files/resources/public/PDF/LRMP/Vanderhoof\\_LRMP.pdf](http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/sites/default/files/resources/public/PDF/LRMP/Vanderhoof_LRMP.pdf). Accessed 16 August 2013.
- BC MFLNRO, 2013. *Forest and Range Practices Act*. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/code/>. Accessed July 2013.
- BC Ministry of Environment (MOE), 2010. Guide Outfitters in British Columbia. (updated July 2010). Fish and Wildlife Branch. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/non\\_resident/#GuideOutfitters](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/non_resident/#GuideOutfitters). Accessed April 2013.
- BC Ministry of Justice 2011. Available at <http://www.pssg.gov.bc.ca/policeservices/statistics/index.htm#policestats>. Accessed February 2013.
- BC Ministry of Justice. 2011. Available at: <http://www.pssg.gov.bc.ca/policeservices/statistics/index.htm#policestats>. Accessed February 2013.
- BC MOF Forest Practices Branch. 1997. Visual Landscape Inventory. Procedures and Standards Manual. May 1997. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/risc/pubs/culture/visual/vli.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC MOF Forest Practices Branch. 1997. Visual Landscape Inventory. Procedures and Standards Manual. May 1997. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/risc/pubs/culture/visual/vli.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC MOF. 1998. Recreation Features Inventory Procedures and Standards Manual. October 1998. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/risc/pubs/culture/rfi/assets/rfi.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC MOF. 1998. Recreation Features Inventory Procedures and Standards Manual. October 1998. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/risc/pubs/culture/rfi/assets/rfi.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC MOF. 2001. Visual Impact Assessment Guidebook. Second edition. Forest Practices Branch. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/tasb/legsregs/fpc/fpcguide/VISUAL/VIA-01.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.

- BC MOF. 2001. Visual Impact Assessment Guidebook. Second edition. Forest Practices Branch. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/tasb/legsregs/fpc/fpcguide/VISUAL/VIA-01.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC MOF. 2012. Prince George Timber Supply Area (TSA) Mid-term Report. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain\\_pine\\_beetle/mid-term-timber-supply-project/Prince%20George%20TSA.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain_pine_beetle/mid-term-timber-supply-project/Prince%20George%20TSA.pdf). Accessed 16 August 2013.
- BC MOF. 2012. Prince George Timber Supply Area (TSA) Mid-term Report. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain\\_pine\\_beetle/mid-term-timber-supply-project/Prince%20George%20TSA.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain_pine_beetle/mid-term-timber-supply-project/Prince%20George%20TSA.pdf). Accessed 16 August 2013.
- BC Parks. 2013. BC Parks. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/bcparks/explore/>. Accessed: July 2013
- BC Stats. 2012a. Statistics by subject, social statistics, socio-economic profiles & indices, profile reports. Available at: <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/statisticsbysubject/SocialStatistics/SocioEconomicProfilesIndices/Profiles.aspx>. Accessed February 2013.
- BC Stats. 2012b. Statistics by Subject, Social Statistics, Socio-Economic Profiles & Indices, Indices Reports, LHA Indices Reports. Available at: <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/StatisticsBySubject/SocialStatistics/SocioEconomicProfilesIndices/SocioEconomicIndices/LHARReports.aspx>. Accessed February 2013.
- BC Stats. 2012g. Statistics by Subject, Social Statistics, Socio-Economic Profiles & Indices, Indices Reports, LHA Indices Reports. Available at <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/StatisticsBySubject/SocialStatistics/SocioEconomicProfilesIndices/SocioEconomicIndices/LHARReports.aspx>. Accessed February 2013.
- BC Vital Statistics Agency. 2011. Selected vital statistics and health status indicators, one hundred fortieth annual report 2011. Appendix 3, Table A. Available at <http://www.vs.gov.bc.ca/stats/annual/2011/>. Accessed February 2013.
- Bell. 2012. Available at [http://www.bell.ca/Mobility/Coverage\\_map](http://www.bell.ca/Mobility/Coverage_map) Accessed February 2013.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations. 2014. *Wildlife Act Review*. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlifeactreview/discussion/disc\\_04.html](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlifeactreview/discussion/disc_04.html). Accessed February 2014.
- British Columbia Supreme Court. 2007. *Tsilhqot'in Nation v. British Columbia*. BCSC 1700. Date: 20071120, Docket 90-0913, Registry: Victoria, BC.
- Brown, D. 2002. Carrier Sekani Self-Government in Context: Land and Resources. *Western Geography*. 12:21-67.

- Brown, D. 2002. Carrier Sekani Self-Government in Context: Land and Resources. *Western Geography* 12:21-67.
- Canadian Forest Products Limited. 2012. Canfor Road Management Agreement, April 2012.
- Carrier Sekani Tribal Council. 2011. Carrier Sekani Tribal Council. Available at <http://www.carriersekani.ca/>. Accessed May 2013.
- Carrier Sekani Tribal Council. 2011. Carrier Sekani Tribal Council. Available at <http://www.carriersekani.ca/>. Accessed May 2013.
- City of Prince George. 2012. Available at <http://princegeorge.ca/cityliving/recreation/Pages/Default.aspx>. Accessed August 2012.
- City of Prince George. 2013a. Prince George, BC. Available at <http://princegeorge.ca/CITYHALL/Pages/default.aspx>. Accessed 2013.
- Coastal GasLink Pipeline Ltd. 2014. Coastal GasLink Pipeline Project - Application for an Environmental Assessment Certificate. Available at [http://a100.gov.bc.ca/appsdata/epic/html/depoy/epic\\_document\\_392\\_37367.html](http://a100.gov.bc.ca/appsdata/epic/html/depoy/epic_document_392_37367.html). Accessed 2015.
- College of New Caledonia (CNC). 2013. Early Intervention Services. Available at [http://www.cnc.bc.ca/campuses/nechako\\_campus/nechako\\_services/early\\_intervention.htm](http://www.cnc.bc.ca/campuses/nechako_campus/nechako_services/early_intervention.htm). Accessed October 2013.
- College of New Caledonia (CNC). 2013. Early Intervention Services. Available at [http://www.cnc.bc.ca/campuses/nechako\\_campus/nechako\\_services/early\\_intervention.htm](http://www.cnc.bc.ca/campuses/nechako_campus/nechako_services/early_intervention.htm). Accessed October 2013.
- Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada (DFO). 2013. 2013–2015 British Columbia Freshwater Salmon Supplement. Available at <http://www.pac.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/fm-gp/rec/docs/SFGfresh-GPSdouce-2013-eng.pdf>. Accessed April 2013.
- Destination BC Corporation, 2013. Vanderhoof Fishing. Available at <http://www.hellobc.com/vanderhoof/things-to-do/water-activities/fishing.aspx>. Accessed May 2013.
- Dewhirst, J. 2013. An Ethnohistory of Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Traditional Territory. Report prepared for Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation. On file with Archaeo Research Limited, Victoria, BC.
- Dewhirst, J. 2013. An Ethnohistory of Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Traditional Territory. Report prepared for Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation. On file with Archaeo Research Limited, Victoria, BC.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Dick R. 2011. Dark-Sky Guidelines, Royal Astronomical Society of Canada, Revised edition. Available at <http://www.rasc.ca/lpa/guidelines>. Accessed July 2013.
- Dick R. 2011. Dark-Sky Guidelines, Royal Astronomical Society of Canada, Revised edition. Available at <http://www.rasc.ca/lpa/guidelines>. Accessed July 2013.
- District of Vanderhoof, (2006). Official Community Plan Bylaw No. 993. Available at <http://www.vanderhoof.ca/District/Bylaws.html>. Accessed May 2013.
- District of Vanderhoof. 2011. Investment – Ready Community Profile. District of Vanderhoof and Area. Available at [http://www.vanderhoof.ca/District/Pol\\_Pub/Reports\\_Docs.html](http://www.vanderhoof.ca/District/Pol_Pub/Reports_Docs.html). Accessed February 2014
- District of Vanderhoof. 2012. Available at <http://www.vanderhoof.ca/District/Council.html>. Accessed April 2012.
- District of Vanderhoof. 2013. Vanderhoof: the Centre of it all. Available at [www.vanderhoof.ca](http://www.vanderhoof.ca). Accessed September 2013.
- District of Vanderhoof. 2013. Vanderhoof: the Centre of it all. Available from: [www.vanderhoof.ca](http://www.vanderhoof.ca). Accessed September 2013.
- District of Vanderhoof. Available at <http://www.vanderhoof.ca/District/Departments/Recreation.html>. Accessed August 2012.
- DM Cultural Services Ltd. and Ulkatcho First Nation 2013. Ulkatcho First Nation Traditional Land Use and Ecological Knowledge of the Proposed New Gold Inc. Blackwater Project, Final Report (Public). Report on file with DM Cultural Services, Mill Bay, BC.
- DM Cultural Services Ltd., and Ulkatcho First Nation 2013. Ulkatcho First Nation Traditional land Use and Ecological Knowledge of the Proposed New Gold Inc. Blackwater Project, Final Report (Public). Report on file with DM Cultural Services, Mill Bay, BC.
- Enbridge, ?. 2010. Enbridge Northern Gateway Project. Aboriginal Traditional Knowledge Fact Sheet. Available at [http://www.northerngateway.ca/assets/pdf/Aboriginal/NGP-FS-05-003\\_Aboriginal%20Traditional%20Knowledge.pdf](http://www.northerngateway.ca/assets/pdf/Aboriginal/NGP-FS-05-003_Aboriginal%20Traditional%20Knowledge.pdf). Accessed December 2012.
- Enbridge. 2010. Enbridge Northern Gateway Project. Aboriginal Traditional Knowledge Fact Sheet. Available at [http://www.northerngateway.ca/assets/pdf/Aboriginal/NGP-FS-05-003\\_Aboriginal%20Traditional%20Knowledge.pdf](http://www.northerngateway.ca/assets/pdf/Aboriginal/NGP-FS-05-003_Aboriginal%20Traditional%20Knowledge.pdf). Accessed December 2012.
- Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects, 9 September 2013.
- EOCP. 2012. Available at: <http://www.eocp.org/files/pgwwtc.html>. Accessed October 2012.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



ERM Rescan. 2014. Blackwater Gold Project - Navigable Waters Baseline Report and Technical Assessment 2014. Prepared for New Gold Inc. by ERM Rescan: British Columbia.

Forest Act. RSBC 1996. c.157. Available at  
[http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/96157\\_00](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/96157_00).  
Accessed on 16 August 2013.

Forest Act. RSBC 1996. c.157. Available at  
[http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/96157\\_00](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/96157_00).  
Accessed on 16 August 2013.

Forest and Range Practices Act. SBC 2002. c.69. Available at  
[http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02069\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02069_01).  
Accessed 16 August 2013.

Forest and Range Practices Act. SBC 2002. c.69. Available at  
[http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02069\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02069_01).  
Accessed 16 August 2013.

Forest Practices Code of British Columbia Act. RSBC 1996. c.159. Available at  
[http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96159\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96159_01).  
Accessed on 16 August 2013.

Forest Practices Code of British Columbia Act. RSBC 1996. c.159. Available at  
[http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96159\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96159_01).  
Accessed on 16 August 2013.

Fort St. James District. 2013. Fort St. James, BC. Available at <http://fortstjames.ca/>. Accessed 2012.

Fort St. James District. Available at <http://fortstjames.ca/parks-recreation/>. Accessed August 2012.

Furniss, E. 2004. The Carrier Indian and the Politics of History. In E.R. Wilson, Native Peoples: The Canadian Experience. Toronto: Oxford University Press, 198–222.

Furniss, E. 2004. The Carrier Indian and the Politics of History. In E.R. Wilson, Native Peoples: The Canadian Experience. Toronto: Oxford University Press, 198–222).

Gessner, S. 2003. The Prosodic System of the Dakelh (Carrier) Language. Ph.D. Thesis, Department of Linguistics, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC.

Gessner, S. 2003. The Prosodic System of the Dakelh (Carrier) Language. Ph.D. thesis, Department of Linguistics, University of British Columbia.

Gibson, G. and J. Klinck. 2005. "Canada's Resilient North: The Impact of Mining on Aboriginal Communities". *Pimatisiwin: A Journal of Aboriginal and Indigenous Community Health* 3(1).

Government of BC, 1996a. *Mineral Tenure Act*. RSBC 1996, c 292. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96292\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96292_01). Accessed April 2013.

Government of BC, 1996b. *Wildlife Act*. RSBC 1996, c488.

Government of BC, 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. Available at [http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/vanderhoof\\_lrmp/index.html](http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/vanderhoof_lrmp/index.html). Accessed December 2012.

Government of BC, 2008. Vanderhoof Access Management Plan. Available at <http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/project.html>. Accessed March 2013.

Government of BC. 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. Available at [http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/vanderhoof\\_lrmp/index.html](http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/vanderhoof_lrmp/index.html). Accessed December 2012.

Government of BC. 2002b. *Drinking Water Protection Act*. SBC 2002, c. 9.

Government of BC. 2002d. Community Care and Assisted Living Act. SBC 2002, c. 75. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02075\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02075_01)

Government of British Columbia (BC). 2002a. *British Columbia Environmental Assessment Act*. SBC 2002, c. 43.

Government of British Columbia. 1996a. *Commercial Transport Act*.

Government of British Columbia. 1996b. *Motor Vehicle Act*.

Government of British Columbia. 1996c. *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act*

Government of British Columbia. 2002c. *Food Safety Act*. SBC 2002, Chapter 28. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02028\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02028_01). Access October 2013.

Government of British Columbia. 2004a. *BC Transportation Act*.

Government of British Columbia. 2004b. *Passenger Transport Act*.

Government of Canada. 1992. *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act*, 1992. SC 1992, c. 34.



## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- ICBC, Corporate Communications Department. 2013. Collision statistics, including volume and type of vehicle, for Highway 16 between Prince George and Burns Lake and on Highway 27 over the 5 year period from 2007 through 2011. MLS. 2012. Available at <http://www.realtor.ca/splash.aspx>. Accessed August 2012.
- ICBC, Corporate Communications Department. 2013. Collision statistics, including volume and type of vehicle, for Highway 16 between Prince George and Burns Lake and on Highway 27 over the 5 year period from 2007 thru 2011. MLS. 2012. Available at <http://www.realtor.ca/splash.aspx>. Accessed August 2012
- Indigenous Work Force. 2013. Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Project 2013. Available at <http://www.indigenousworkforce.org/sample-page/projects-in-2013/lhooskuz-dene-nation-project-2013/>. Accessed February 2013.
- Indigenous Work Force. 2013. Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Project 2013. Available at <http://www.indigenousworkforce.org/sample-page/projects-in-2013/lhooskuz-dene-nation-project-2013/>. Accessed February 2013.
- Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/tasb/SLRP/plan92.html>. Accessed 5 March 2015.
- Integrated Land Management Bureau. March 2008. Review and Amendment Project. Available at <http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/project.html>. Accessed 16 May 2013.
- Land Act. RSBC 1996. c.245. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96245\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96245_01). Accessed on 16 August 2013.
- LDN Comments (2014, April 9). Lhoosk'uz Dené Nation Comments on Blackwater Gold Project, New Gold Inc. Application for an Environmental Assessment Certificate/Environmental Impact Statement Part C – Lhoosk'uz Dené Nation Draft March 2014. BC, Canada: Personal communication.
- Lhoosk'uz Dené Nation. 2014, April 9. Lhoosk'uz Dené Nation Comments on Blackwater Gold Project, New Gold Inc. Application for an Environmental Assessment Certificate/Environmental Impact Statement Part C – Lhoosk'uz Dené Nation Draft March 2014. BC, Personal communication.
- Lhoosk'uz Dené Nation Elders. 2013 July. Interview with LDN Elders. Prince George, BC.
- LM Forest Resource Solutions Ltd. 2011. The Vanderhoof Ecosystem Restoration Strategic Plan – Prepared for the Vanderhoof Ecosystem Restoration Steering Committee. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/dva/Other%20Documents/Vanderhoof%20ER%20Strategic%20Plan.pdf>. Accessed April 2013.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



Media in British Columbia. Available at <http://www.altstuff.com/mediabc.html>. Accessed August 2012.

Métis Nation British Columbia (MNBC) 2014. Métis Nation British Columbia “Working on behalf of Métis people in BC” Available at [http://www.mnbc.ca/app/webroot/uploads/About\\_Us/MNBC\\_at\\_a\\_Glance\\_FINAL\\_Rv\\_2.19.14-signed.pdf](http://www.mnbc.ca/app/webroot/uploads/About_Us/MNBC_at_a_Glance_FINAL_Rv_2.19.14-signed.pdf). Accessed March 2014.

Métis Nation British Columbia (MNBC). 2010. Response to the British Columbia Utilities Commission. Available at [http://www.bcuc.com/Documents/Proceedings/2010/DOC\\_25662\\_C9-3-MNBC-response-IR-BCUC.pdf](http://www.bcuc.com/Documents/Proceedings/2010/DOC_25662_C9-3-MNBC-response-IR-BCUC.pdf). Accessed February 2014.

Métis Nation British Columbia (MNBC). 2014. Métis Nation British Columbia Working on Behalf of Métis people in BC. Available at [http://www.mnbc.ca/app/webroot/uploads/About\\_Us/MNBC\\_at\\_a\\_Glance\\_FINAL\\_Rv\\_2.19.14-signed.pdf](http://www.mnbc.ca/app/webroot/uploads/About_Us/MNBC_at_a_Glance_FINAL_Rv_2.19.14-signed.pdf). Accessed March 2014.

Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations, BC. 2014. Wildlife Act Review. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlifeactreview/discussion/disc\\_04.html](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlifeactreview/discussion/disc_04.html). Accessed February 2014.

Moose Lake Lodge, 2013. Available at <http://www.mooselakelodge.com/index.html>. Accessed April 2013.

Nazko First Nation (NFN). 2011. Available at <http://nazkoband.ca>. Accessed February 2013.

Nazko First Nation. 2011. Available at <http://nazkoband.ca>. Accessed February 2013.

Nazko First Nation. 2013. Letter to BC EAO about the Proposed Blackwater Gold Project. Quesnel, BC, Canada. Dated 19 September 2013.

Nechako Valley Community Services Society (NVCSS). Available at: <http://www.nvcss.ca/index.htm>. Accessed May 2013.

New Gold Inc. 2012. 2012 Sustainability Report Summary, Growing Responsibly. Retrieved from <http://www.NewGold.com/corporate-responsibility/sustainability-report/default.aspx>; accessed October 2013.

New Gold Inc. 2013. Health, Safety, Environment and Corporate Social Responsibility (“HSE CSR”) Policy. Retrieved from <http://www.NewGold.com/company/corporate-governance/default.aspx>; accessed October 2013.

NFN. 2013. Letter to BC EAO regarding the Proposed Blackwater Gold Project. Quesnel, BC, Canada. 19 September 2013.

- Northern Health. 2014. Health and medical services plan best management guide for industrial groups. Prepared by the Office of Health and Resource Development. Version 1.0.
- Poser, W. 2004. The First Record of the Carrier Language. Available at <http://www.scribd.com/doc/68159778/The-First-Record-of-the-Carrier-Language>. Accessed October 2013.
- Poser, W. 2004. The First Record of the Carrier Language. Available at <http://www.scribd.com/doc/68159778/The-First-Record-of-the-Carrier-Language>. Accessed October 2013.
- Prince George & District Elizabeth Fry Society. Available at: <http://pgefry.bc.ca/programs/prince-george/family-resource-centre>. Accessed April 2012.
- Provincial Agricultural Land Commission. 2013. *Agricultural Land Commission Act*. Available at <http://www.alc.gov.bc.ca/>. Accessed July 2013.
- PTP ASEP Training Society. (2010). Nadleh Whut'en First Nation. Available at <http://www.ptpasep.ca/stellaten-first-nation.html>. Accessed December 2012.
- PTP ASEP Training Society. 2010. Nadleh Whut'en First Nation. Available at <http://www.ptpasep.ca/stellaten-first-nation.html>. Accessed December 2012.
- Regional District of Bulkley Nechako. 2009. Vanderhoof Rural Official Community Plan (OCP). Available at <http://www.rdbn.bc.ca/images/pdf/planning/VanderhoofRuralOCP/OCP%20Document.pdf>. Accessed July 2013.
- Saik'uz First Nation Elders. 2013, May. Interview with Saik'uz First Nation Elders. Stoney Creek, BC.
- School District 91: Nechako Lakes. n.d. Meet the Nadleh Whut'en Band. Fort Fraser, BC, Canada.
- School District 91: Nechako Lakes. n.d. Meet the Nadleh Whut'en Band. Fort Fraser, BC, Canada.
- Skyvector.com, 2013. Aeronautical Charts. Available at: <http://skyvector.com/>; Accessed: April 2013.
- Snipview.com, 2009. Cheslatta Trail. Available at: [http://www.snipview.com/q/Cheslatta\\_Trail](http://www.snipview.com/q/Cheslatta_Trail), Accessed: May 2015.
- Statistics Canada. 2002. 2001 Census of Canada. Available at <http://www12.statcan.ca/english/census01/home/index.cfm>. Accessed April 2012.

- Statistics Canada. 2007a. 2006 Community Profiles. Statistics Canada Catalogue no. 92-591-XWE. Ottawa. Released 13 March 2007. Available at <http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2006/dp-pd/prof/92-591/index.cfm?Lang=E>. Accessed April 2012.
- Statistics Canada. 2012. Census profile. 2011 Census Statistics Canada Catalogue no. 98-316-XWE. Ottawa. Released 8 February 2012. Available at <http://www12.statcan.ca/census-recensement/2011/dp-pd/prof/index.cfm?Lang=E>. Accessed July 2013.
- Statistics Canada. 2012. Census profile. 2011 Census. Statistics Canada Catalogue no. 98-316-XWE. Ottawa. Released 8 February 2012. Available at <http://www12.statcan.ca/census-recensement/2011/dp-pd/prof/index.cfm?Lang=E>. Accessed July 2013.
- Statistics Canada. 2013. 2011 National Household Survey Profile. Statistics Canada Catalogue no. 99-004-XWE. Ottawa. Available at: <http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2011/dp-pd/prof/index.cfm?Lang=E> Accessed July 2013.
- Stellat'en First Nation. 2009. Stellat'en First Nation. Available at <http://www.stellaten.ca/Home.aspx>. Accessed February 2013.
- Stellat'en First Nation. 2009. Stellat'en First Nation. Available at <http://www.stellaten.ca/Home.aspx>. Accessed February 2013.
- Trapline TR0512T014. 2013. Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Trapline Holder . Interviews with Trapline Holders. BC.
- Tribal Energy and Environmental Information: Environmental Resources for Tribal Energy Development, Visual Resource Mitigation Measures. Office of Indian Energy and Economic Development. Available at <http://teeic.anl.gov/er/geothermal/mitigation/visual/index.cfm>. Accessed 16 August 2013.
- Tribal Energy and Environmental Information: Environmental Resources for Tribal Energy Development, Visual Resource Mitigation Measures. Office of Indian Energy and Economic Development. Available at <http://teeic.anl.gov/er/geothermal/mitigation/visual/index.cfm>. Accessed 16 August 2013.
- Tsilhqot'in Framework Agreement. 2011. Amended Agreement Among the Province of British Columbia, the Tsilhqot'in Nation and the Tsilhqot'in National Government. 2011 Amended Agreement.
- Tsilhqot'in Nation v. British Columbia. 2007. BCSC 1700. Date: 20071120, Docket 90-0913, Registry: Victoria.
- Tsilhqot'in National Government (TNG). 2006. About Tsilhqot'in National Government. Available at <http://www.tsilhqotin.ca/abouttng.htm>. Accessed February 2014.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



Tsilhqot'in National Government (TNG). 2006. About Tsilhqot'in National Government Available at <http://www.tsilhqotin.ca/abouttng.htm>. Accessed February 2014.

Ulkatcho First Nation. 2012. Available at <http://ulkatcho.com/>. Accessed February 2013.

Ulkatcho First Nation. 2012. Available at <http://ulkatcho.com/>. Accessed February 2013.

Village of Burns Lake. 2012. Available at <http://www.burnslake.ca/village/24/mayor+and+council>. Accessed April 2012.

Village of Burns Lake. Available at <http://www.burnslake.ca/village/3/village+recreation>. Accessed August 2012.

Village of Fraser Lake. 2013. Fraser Lake, BC. Available at <http://www.fraserlake.ca/>. Accessed 2013.

Village of Fraser Lake. Available at <http://www.fraserlake.ca/default.aspx?PageID=1037/>. Accessed August 2012.

Government of Canada. 1985. *Indian Act*, R.S.C., 1985, c. I-5. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/i-5/>

Triton Environmental Consultants Ltd. 2014. Stelat'en First Nation Land and Resource Use Study Report (Proponent Version for New Gold Incorporated).

Carrier Sekani Tribal Council. 2006. Aboriginal Interests & Use Study on the Enbridge Gateway Pipeline. Available at <http://www.cstc.bc.ca/AIUS%20COMPLETE%20FINAL%20inc.%20maps.pdf>

Coastal GasLink Pipeline Ltd. 2014. Coastal GasLink Pipeline Project - Application for an Environmental Assessment Certificate. Available at [http://a100.gov.bc.ca/appsdata/epic/html/deploy/epic\\_document\\_392\\_37367.html](http://a100.gov.bc.ca/appsdata/epic/html/deploy/epic_document_392_37367.html). Accessed 2015.

Pacific Trail Pipelines LP. 2007. Kitimat to Summit Lake Pipeline Looping Project (Pacific Trail Pipelines Project). Available at [http://a100.gov.bc.ca/appsdata/epic/html/deploy/epic\\_document\\_270\\_24890.html](http://a100.gov.bc.ca/appsdata/epic/html/deploy/epic_document_270_24890.html)

### **Personal Communications**

Adolph, S. 2013. Trapline Owner. Trapline # TR0712T036. BC. Personal Communication.

Balding, Dave. Emergency Coordinator. Village of Fraser Lake. Personal Communication. July 2012.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Balding, Dave. Emergency Coordinator. Village of Fraser Lake. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Bennett, Chrissy. Integrated Emergency Response Program Consultant. Fort St. James District and Nek'azdli Band. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Bennett, Rob. Fire Chief, Fort St. James District. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Bogh, Tara. Manager, Economic Development. Initiatives Prince George. Personal Communication. August 2012.
- Carlson, Shelley. Economic Developer Officer, Village of Fraser Lake. Personal Communication. August 2012.
- Carver, Paul. Superintendent of Public Works, District of Vanderhoof. Personal Communication.. February 2013.
- Carver, Paul. Superintendent of Public Works, District of Vanderhoof. Personal Communication. July 2012. February 2013.
- Claughton, Rick. Public Works Superintendent. District of Fort St. James. Personal Communication. February 2013.
- Collins, Eryn. Communications Officer. Northern Health. Personal Communication. February 2013.
- Doerig, E. 2013. Resident and Stakeholder. BC. Personal Communication.
- Dyck, J. 2012. Detachment Services Assistant, Vanderhoof RCMP, personal communication.
- Edge, Amanda. Head Nurse, Stuart Lake Hospital. Northern Health. Personal Communication. July 2012
- Erasmus, G. 2013. Resident and Stakeholder. BC. Personal Communication.
- Foster, Paul. Sergeant, Fraser Lake Detachment, RCMP. Personal communication. July 2012.
- Foster, Paul. Sergeant, Fraser Lake Detachment, RCMP. Personal communication. July 2012.
- Friesen, Dorothy. Manager, Prince George Chamber of Commerce. Telephone Interview. July 2013.
- Gordon, Jason, 2013. Planning/Silviculture Forester, Nechako Lumber Company and L&M Lumber, July 2013.



## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Green, Cuyler. Director of Operations, Prince George Airport. Personal Communication. September 2012. Hand, Randy. Public Works Superintendent, District of Fort St. James. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Harrington, D. 2013. Guideoutfitter. BC. Personal Communication.
- Hillman, Vern. Public Works Director, Village of Fraser Lake. Personal Communication. February 2013
- Hillman, Vern. Public Works Director, Village of Fraser Lake. Personal Communication. July 2012. February 2013.
- Huges, April. Health Services Director, St. John Hospital. Northern Health Unit. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Hunter, Marie. Site Manager, Lakes District Hospital and Health Centre. Northern Health. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Hunter, Marie. Site Manager, Lakes District Hospital and Health Centre. Northern Health. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Iverson, John. Deputy Fire Chief, City of Prince George. September 2012.
- Iverson, John. Deputy Fire Chief, City of Prince George. September 2012.
- Jimmie, R. 2013. Trapline Owner. Trapline # TR0512T014. BC. Personal Communication.
- Joseph, G. J. R. 2013. Trapline Owner. Trapline # #TR0711T007. BC. Personal Communication
- Keays, Jason. Sergeant, Vanderhoof Detachment, RCMP. Personal communication. July 2012.
- Keays, Jason. Sergeant, Vanderhoof Detachment, RCMP. Personal communication. July 2012.
- LePage, Mitch, 2013. Engineering Manager, Blackwater, New Gold Inc. July 2013
- Lethbridge, Lynn and Phipps, Shelley, 2006. "Income and the Outcomes of Children," Analytical Studies Branch Research Paper Series 2006281e, Statistics Canada, Analytical Studies Branch
- Lhoosk'uz Dene First Nation. 2013. Elders and Members. BC. Personal Communication.
- Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation. 2013. Member. BC. Personal Communication.
- Luggi Sr, R. 2013. Trapline Owner. Trapline # TR0712T039. BC. Personal Communication.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Lytel, Jackie. Economic Development Office. Village of Fraser Lake. Telephone Interview. July 2013.
- MacDonald, Grant. Staff Sergeant, Detachment Commander, Burns Lake Detachment, RCMP. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Marks, Eugene. Director of Instruction, School District 91. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Martin, Rick. Director of Public Works, Village of Burns Lake. Personal Communication. February 2013.
- Martin, Rick. Director of Public Works, Village of Burns Lake. Personal Communication. July 2012. February 2013.
- McBride, Jim. Fire Chief, Village of Burns Lake. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- McBride, Jim. Fire Chief, Village of Burns Lake. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- McIntosh, Blake. Supervisor, Utility Operations. City of Prince George. Personal Communication. February 2013
- McIntosh, Blake. Supervisor, Utility Operations. City of Prince George. Personal Communication. February 2013.
- Nevedon, Steve, 2013. Operations Supervisor, Plateau Division, Canadian Forest Products Limited, July 2013.
- Pacheco, Joe. Emergency Planning Coordinator and Fire Chief, District of Vanderhoof. Personal Communication. July 2012. Pacheco, Lora-Lee. Head Nurse and Clinical Coordinator, Fraser Lake Community Health Centre. Northern Health. Personal Communication. 2012.
- Pacheco, Joe. Emergency Planning Coordinator and Fire Chief, District of Vanderhoof. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Pacheco, Lora-Lee. Head Nurse and Clinical Coordinator, Fraser Lake Community Health Centre. Northern Health. Personal Communication. 2012.
- Peterson, Nolan, 2013. Chief Engineer, Blackwater, New Gold Inc. July 2013
- Powers, Marjorie. Manager; Clinical and Counselling Services, Lakes District Community Services. Personal Communication. 2012
- Romeo, Miguel. Manager, District of Fort St. James Chamber of Commerce. Telephone Interview. July 2013.

## **BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT**

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Saikuz First Nation. 2013. Members. BC. Personal Communication.
- Schoberg, Gord. Senior Manager of Government Relations, Fortis. Telephone Interview. July 2013.
- Schoberg, Gord. Senior Manager of Government Relations, Fortis. Telephone Interview. July 2013.
- Sears, Craig. General Manager to Operations, PNG. Telephone Interview. July 2013.
- Sears, Craig. General Manager to Operations, PNG. Telephone Interview. July 2013.
- Sewell, Vince. District Engineering Officer, Vanderhoof Forest District. Personal Communication, July 2013.
- Siemens, Spencer, Visitor Services Coordinator, District of Vanderhoof Chamber of Commerce. Telephone Interview. July 2013.
- Siemens, Spencer, Visitor Services Coordinator, District of Vanderhoof Chamber of Commerce. Telephone Interview. July 2013.
- Squinas, L. 2013. Lhoosk'uz Dene First Nation Member. BC. Personal Communication.
- St. Onge, Dan. Distribution Feeder Planning Engineer Northwest and NIA. Telephone interview. July 2013.
- St. Onge, Dan. Distribution Feeder Planning Engineer Northwest and NIA. Telephone interview. July 2013.
- Stubbs, Eric. Superintendent, Prince George City Detachment, RCMP. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Thalhofer, Paul. Detachment Commander, Fort St. James Detachment, RCMP. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Thalhofer, Paul. Detachment Commander, Fort St. James Detachment, RCMP. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Thalhofer, Paul. Detachment Commander, Fort St. James Detachment, RCMP. Personal Communication. July 2012.
- Todd, Ryan, 2013. Manager, Environment, Blackwater, New Gold Inc. July 2013.
- Wall, Shelley. Manager, Chamber of Commerce. Village of Burns Lake. Personal Communication. August 2012.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



Wishart, Cathe. Vice President, Community and Student Services, College of New Caledonia.  
Telephone Interview. July 2013.

Wong, W. EIT, Ministry of Transportation & Infrastructure. Personal Communication. September  
2012.

Wood, D and J. 2013. Stakeholder. BC. Personal Communication.

Worthing, Sheryl. Chief Administrative Officer, Village of Burns Lake. Personal Communication.  
July 2012.

### ***Section 8 – Assessment of Potential Heritage Effects***

AMEC Environment & Infrastructure. 2011. Archaeological Overview Assessment New Gold Inc.  
Blackwater Gold Project. Report on file, New Gold Inc., Vancouver, BC.

AMEC Environment & Infrastructure. 2013. Archaeological Impact Assessment New Gold Inc.  
Blackwater Gold Project Heritage Inspection Permit 2012-0295. Pending.

Archaeology Branch. 1998. Archaeological Impact Assessment Guidelines [revised edition], BC  
Ministry of Small Business, Tourism and Culture, Archaeology Branch, Victoria, BC.

Archaeology Branch. 2001a. Bulletin 1: recording post-1846 CMTs. Victoria, BC, BC Ministry of  
Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations, Archaeology Branch. Available at  
[http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/archaeology/bulletins/bulletin1\\_recording\\_post-1846\\_CMTs.htm](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/archaeology/bulletins/bulletin1_recording_post-1846_CMTs.htm)

Archaeology Branch. 2001b. Culturally Modified Trees of British Columbia. A Handbook for the  
Identification and Recording of Culturally Modified Trees. BC Ministry of Small Business,  
Tourism, and Culture, Victoria, BC.

BC MFLNRO. 2013. Forest and Range Evaluation Program. Available at  
<http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/frep/>.

British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Application Information  
Requirements Template. Available at  
[http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/AIR\\_Template\\_27May2013.doc.pdf](http://www.eao.gov.bc.ca/pdf/AIR_Template_27May2013.doc.pdf); accessed 2013.  
Accessed February 2014.

British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO).  
BC Fossil Management Framework. 2005. Available at  
[http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/land\\_tenures/fossil\\_management/](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/land_tenures/fossil_management/).

British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO).  
2005. BC Fossil Management Framework. Land Tenure Branch, Victoria, BC.

British Columbia Palaeontological Alliance. 2013. Policy on Fossil Collecting and Regulation. Available at <http://www.bcfossils.ca/collecting.html>. Accessed September 2013.

Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment. 1998. Canada-wide Accord on Environmental Harmonization.

Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency (Agency). 2012. Reference Guide on Physical and Cultural Heritage Resources. Available at <https://www.ceaa-acee.gc.ca/default.asp?lang=En&n=1BE75513-1>; assessed 2014. Accessed February 2014.

Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects, 9 September 2013.

Fossil Management Review Technical Working Group. 2004. Fossil Management for British Columbia. A Review of Fossil Management in Other Jurisdictions With Recommendations for British Columbia. British Columbia Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. November 2004.

Government of BC. 1996b. *Heritage Conservation Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 187. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96187\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96187_01); 2013. Accessed February 2014.

Government of BC. 1996c. *Local Government Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 323. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/96323\\_00](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/96323_00); 2013. Accessed February 2014.

Government of BC. 1996d. *Mineral Tenure Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 292. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_96292\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_96292_01).

Government of BC. 2002a. *Environmental Assessment Act*. SBC 2002, c. 43. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/civix/document/id/complete/statreg/02043\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/civix/document/id/complete/statreg/02043_01).

Government of BC. 2002b. *Forest and Range Practices Act*. SBC 2002, c. 69. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/00\\_02069\\_01](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/00_02069_01); 2013. Accessed February 2014.

Government of BC. 2012. *Forest Planning and Practices Regulation*. Part of *Forest and Range Practices Act*. BC Reg. 14/2004. Includes amendments up to BC Reg. 157/2012, June 25, 2012.

Government of British Columbia (BC). 1996a. *Forest Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 157. Available at [http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws\\_new/document/ID/freeside/96157\\_00](http://www.bclaws.ca/EPLibraries/bclaws_new/document/ID/freeside/96157_00); 2013. Accessed February 2014.

Government of British Columbia. 1996. *Heritage Conservation Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 187.

Government of British Columbia. 2002. *Environmental Assessment Act*. SBC. 2002, c. 43.

Government of Canada. 2004. Canada-British Columbia Agreement for Environmental Assessment Cooperation (2004).

Government of Canada. 2012. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. SC 2012, c. 52. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/C-15.21/index.html>; 2014. Accessed February 2014.

Government of Canada. 2012. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. SC 2012. c. 52.

Ludvigsen, R. and G. Beard, 1994. *West Coast Fossils: A Guide to the Ancient Life of Vancouver Island*. Whitecap Books, Vancouver, BC and Toronto, ON.

Resource Practices Branch. 2013. Cultural Heritage Resources. Victoria, BC. Forest & Range Evaluation Program, Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations, Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/frep/values/heritage.htm>. Accessed March 2013.

Supreme Court of Canada. 1997. *Delgamuukw v. British Columbia*, 3 S.C.R. 1010.

### ***Personal Communications***

Lhoosk'uz First Nation. 2013. Interview with Lhoosk'uz and Saik'uz First Nation Elders, 4 July 2013, Prince George, BC.

Ulkatcho First Nation. 2012. E-mail from Ulkatcho First Nation representative to New Gold, Inc. June 2012 (ROC #255).

Ulkatcho First Nation. 2012. Letter from Ulkatcho First Nation representative to New Gold, Inc. 31 January 2012 (ROC #174).

### ***Section 9 – Assessment of Potential Health Effects***

Australian Child & Adolescent Trauma, Loss & Grief Network. 2009. Available at <http://earlytraumagriev.anu.edu.au>. Accessed 10 January 2014.

Australian Institute of Health & Welfare. 2011. Cardiovascular disease: Australian facts 2011. Available at <http://www.aihw.gov.au/publication-detail/?id=10737418510>. Accessed 10 January 2014.

Babisch W. 2014. Updated exposure-response relationship between road traffic noise and coronary heart diseases: A meta-analysis. Department of Environmental Hygiene, Federal Environment Agency. 16:68,1-9



British Columbia Ministry of Energy and Mines and Responsible for Core Review (BC MEM). Undated. Health and Safety. Available at <http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/Mining/HealthandSafety/Pages/default.aspx>. Accessed 17 December 2013.

British Columbia Ministry of Energy and Mines and Responsible for Core Review (BC MEM). 2013. Available at <http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/Mining/HealthandSafety/Directives-Alerts/Pages/default.aspx>. Accessed 29 November 2013.

British Columbia Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources (BC MEMPR). 2008. Health, safety and reclamation code for mines in British Columbia. 2008 reprinting of 2003 ed. Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources. Mining and Minerals Division. Victoria, British Columbia. Available at <http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/Mining/HealthandSafety/Documents/HSRC2008.pdf>. Accessed 29 November 2013.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment (BC MOE), 1993. Quantitative human health risk assessment – phase 1 review of methods and framework recommendation. Prepared by Golder Associates Ltd.

British Columbia Ministry of Health. Undated. Aboriginal Youth Suicide Fact Sheet. Available at [http://www.health.gov.bc.ca/mhd/pdf/fact\\_sheets/ab\\_youth\\_suicide.pdf](http://www.health.gov.bc.ca/mhd/pdf/fact_sheets/ab_youth_suicide.pdf). Accessed 13 January 2014.

British Columbia Vital Statistics Agency. 2011. Appendix 3. Selected health status indicators by local health area, health service delivery area, and health authority. British Columbia 2007–2011. Selected vital statistics and health status indicators. *One hundred and fortieth Annual Report 2011*. Available at <http://www.vs.gov.bc.ca/stats/annual/2011/pdf/appendix3.pdf>. Accessed 18 March 2013.

Brook, R.D., B. Franklin, W. Cascio, Y. Hong, G. Howard, M. Lipsett, R. Luepker, M. Mittleman, J. Samet, S.C. Smith Jr., and I. Tager. 2004. A Statement for Healthcare Professionals From the Expert Panel on Population and Prevention Science of the American Heart Association. Air Pollution and Cardiovascular Disease. AHA Scientific Statement. Available at <http://circ.ahajournals.org/content/109/21/2655.long>, Accessed 28 March 2014.

Canadian Centre for Occupational Health and Safety (CCOHS). 2008. OH&S Legislation in Canada – Introduction. Available at <http://www.ccohs.ca/oshanswers/legisl/intro.html>. Accessed 29 November 2013.

Canadian Population Health Initiative (CPHI), 2005. Available at <http://50.56.166.145/ktwebservice/download.php?code=8cce027543a0365624b6594a5590212931da86cc&d=127&u=i6vs44duruibagb1udo5gi242>.

- Chan, L., O. Receveur, D. Sharp, H. Schwartz, A. Ing, and C. Tikhonov. 2011. First Nations Food, Nutrition and Environment Study. University of Northern British Columbia, Prince George, BC.
- Clark, M., P. Riben, and E. Nowgesic. 2002. The association of housing density, isolation, and tuberculosis in Canadian First Nations communities. *International Journal of Epidemiology* 31: 940-945.
- CPHI. 2013. Available at <http://www.cihi.ca/CIHI-ext-portal/internet/EN/tabbedcontent/factors+influencing+health/environmental/cihi021330>.
- Doll R., and R. Peto. 1981. The causes of cancer: quantitative estimates of avoidable risks of cancer in the United States today. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*. 1981;66(6):1191–1308.
- Donoghue, A.M. 2004. Occupational health hazards in mining: An overview. *Occupational Medicine*. Oxford, England, 54(5), 283-289.
- Dotson, KB., Hethmon, T.A. 2011. Surface Mining Methods. ILO Encyclopedia of Occupational Health & Safety. Available at <http://www.ilo.org/oshenc/part-xi/mining-and-quarrying/item/599-surface-mining-methods>. Accessed 3 December 2013.
- ENC. 2004. Engineering Noise Control Software Version 2.0. Causal Systems, Rundle Mall, SA, Australia.
- Engineering Noise Control (ENC) 2004. Engineering Noise Control Software Version 2.0. Causal Systems, Rundle Mall, SA, Australia
- Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2013. Guideline for the Selection of Valued Components and Assessment of Potential Effects, 9 September 2013.
- European Agency for Safety and Health at Work. Undated. What are the main hazards in construction?. Available at <https://osha.europa.eu/en/faq/faq1/what-are-the-main-hazards-in-construction>. Accessed 15 April 2014.
- Health Canada. 2003a. Closing the Gaps in Aboriginal Health. Available at [http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/sr-sr/alt\\_formats/hpb-dgps/pdf/pubs/hpr-rps/bull/2003-5-aboriginal-autochtone/2003-5-aboriginal-autochtone-eng.pdf](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/sr-sr/alt_formats/hpb-dgps/pdf/pubs/hpr-rps/bull/2003-5-aboriginal-autochtone/2003-5-aboriginal-autochtone-eng.pdf). Accessed 09 January 2014.
- Health Canada. 2003b. Acting on What We Know: Preventing Youth Suicide in First Nations. Available at [http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fnih-spnia/alt\\_formats/fnihb-dgpsni/pdf/pubs/suicide/prev\\_youth-jeunes-eng.pdf](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fnih-spnia/alt_formats/fnihb-dgpsni/pdf/pubs/suicide/prev_youth-jeunes-eng.pdf). Accessed 16 April 2013 and 09 January 2014.

- Health Canada. 2005. First Nations comparable health indicators. Available at <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fnihah-spnia/pubs/aborig-autoch/2009-stats-profil-vol3/index-eng.php>. Accessed 27 March 2013.
- Health Canada. 2005. National Guidelines for Environmental Assessment: Health Impacts of Noise. Draft Version. Prepared by the Acoustic Unit, Consumer and Clinical Radiation Protection Division Product Safety Programme, Healthy Environments and Consumer Safety Branch. Ottawa, ON, May 2005.
- Health Canada. 2005. National Guidelines for Environmental Assessment: Health Impacts of Noise. Draft Version. Prepared by the Acoustic Unit, Consumer and Clinical Radiation Protection Division Product Safety Programme, Healthy Environments and Consumer Safety Branch. Ottawa, ON, May.
- Health Canada. 2009. Statistical profile on the health of First Nations in Canada: Self-rated health and selected conditions, 2002-2005. Available at <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fnihah-spnia/pubs/aborig-autoch/2009-stats-profil-vol3/index-eng.php>. Accessed 27 March 2013.
- Health Canada. 2009. Vulnerable Populations. Environmental and Workplace Health. Available at <http://www.HealthCanada-sc.gc.ca/ewh-semt/contaminants/vulnerable/index-eng.php>. Accessed 17 December 2013.
- Health Canada. 2009. Vulnerable populations. Environmental and Workplace Health. Available at <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/ewh-semt/contaminants/vulnerable/index-eng.php>. Accessed 17 December 2013.
- Health Canada. 2010. Summary of Epidemiology of Tuberculosis in First Nations Living On-Reserve in Canada, 2000-2008. Available at [http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fnihah-spnia/pubs/diseases-maladies/\\_tuberculos/tuberculos-epidemiology/index-eng.php](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fnihah-spnia/pubs/diseases-maladies/_tuberculos/tuberculos-epidemiology/index-eng.php). Accessed 16 April 2013.
- Health Canada. 2010a. Federal Contaminated Site Risk Assessment in Canada. Part I: Guidance on Human Health Preliminary Quantitative Risk Assessment.
- Health Canada. 2010b. Useful Information for Environmental Assessments
- Health Canada. 2011. Vulnerable Populations. Available at <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/ewh-semt/contaminants/vulnerable/index-eng.php>. Accessed 17 April 2013.
- Health Canada. 2012a. Health Concerns. Cancer. Available at <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/hc-ps/dc-ma/cancer-eng.php>. Accessed 28 March 2014.
- Health Canada. 2012b. First Nations and Inuit Health. Available at <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fnihah-spnia/index-eng.php>. Accessed 16 April 2012.

- Health Canada. 2013a. First Nations & Inuit Health. Available at <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fniah-spnia/index-eng.php>. Accessed 10 January 2014.
- Health Canada. 2013b. Suicide Prevention. Available at <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fniah-spnia/promotion/suicide/index-eng.php>. Accessed 09 January 2014.
- Healy T. and J. Kerr. 2009. IMAGINE that! You can use a population health approach in your planning, programs and practice! A Population Health Primer for Northern Health. Rev09/09. Available at [http://www.northernhealth.ca/Portals/0/Your\\_Health/Programs/Healthy%20Living%20And%20Communities/10-400-3190%20-%20Imagine%20That%20Primer%20Volume%20I.pdf](http://www.northernhealth.ca/Portals/0/Your_Health/Programs/Healthy%20Living%20And%20Communities/10-400-3190%20-%20Imagine%20That%20Primer%20Volume%20I.pdf). Accessed 12 April 2013.
- Human Resources Skills and Development Canada (HRSDC). 2013. Indicators of Well-being in Canada. Health—Self-rated Health. Available at <http://www4.hrsdc.gc.ca/.3ndic.1t.4r@-eng.jsp?iid=10>. Accessed 9 April 2013.
- Kashaninia, Z. 2011. Education and Health – An analysis of Regions of British Columbia: Part 5 – Northern Health. Infoline Report. BC Stats. Available at <http://www.bcstats.gov.bc.ca/Publications/Infoline/InfolineArchives2011.aspx>. Accessed 15 April 2013.
- LeGrande, David. 2011. Occupational Health and Safety Hazards in Public and Governmental Services. ILO Encyclopaedia of Occupational Health & Safety. Available at <http://www.ilo.org/oshenc/part-xvii/public-and-government-services/item/818-occupational-health-and-safety-hazards-in-public-and-governmental-services>. Accessed 26 November 2013.
- Mining Industry Human Resources Council (MIHRC). Undated. Mineral Processing Operator. The Assessment Reports. Available at <http://www.mihrc.ca/en/publications/resources/MineralProcessing.pdf>. Accessed 11 February 2014.
- New Gold. 2012a. Our People. Available at <http://www.newgold.com/corporate-responsibility/our-people/default.aspx>. Accessed 17 December 2013.
- New Gold. 2012b. Sustainability and Environment. Available at <http://www.newgold.com/properties/projects/blackwater/sustainability-and-environment/default.aspx>. Accessed 17 December 2013.
- New Gold. 2013. Growing our people. 2012 Sustainability Report. Available at <http://2012sustainabilityreport.newgold.com/growingourpeople.php>. Accessed 21 February 2014.
- Northern Health. 2012a. Community Health Synopsis. Burns Lake. LHA 55. Available at [https://www.northernhealth.ca/Portals/0/Your\\_Health/Programs/Healthy%20Living%20An](https://www.northernhealth.ca/Portals/0/Your_Health/Programs/Healthy%20Living%20An)

- d%20Communities/HealthyCommunitiesToolkit/CHSLHA55Burns%20Lake.pdf.  
Accessed 15 April 2012.
- Northern Health. 2012b. Community Health Synopsis. Prince George, Valemount, Mackenzie. LHA 57. Available at <http://chip.northernhealth.ca/Portals/2/Document%20Repository/2012%20Updates/PH%20Synopsis/Community%20Health%20Synopsis%20-%20LHA%2057.pdf>. Accessed 15 April 2012.
- Northern Health. 2012c. Community Health Synopsis. Vanderhoof, Fraser Lake, Fort St. James. LHA 56 - Nechako. Available at <http://chip.northernhealth.ca/Portals/2/Document%20Repository/2012%20Updates/PH%20Synopsis/Community%20Health%20Synopsis%20-%20LHA%2056.pdf>. Accessed 15 April 2012.
- Northern Health. 2012d. Community Health Synopsis. Quesnel. LHA 28. Available at <http://chip.northernhealth.ca/Portals/2/Document%20Repository/2012%20Updates/PH%20Synopsis/Community%20Health%20Synopsis%20-%20LHA%2028%20-%20Ques.pdf>. Accessed 11 April 2012.
- Pelletier, T., M. Chottrell, and R. Hardie. 2013. Improving Education and Employment Outcomes for First Nations and Métis People. Available at <http://www.jointtaskforce.ca/wp-content/uploads/2013/04/Research-Report-for-the-Task-Force-March-26.pdf>. Accessed 09 January 2014.
- PHAC. 2009. Minimizing the Risks of Cardiovascular Disease. Available at <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/cd-mc/cvd-mcv/risk-risques-eng.php>. Accessed 28 March 2014.
- PHAC. 2011. Diabetes in Canada: Facts and figures from a public health perspective. Available at <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/cd-mc/publications/diabetes-diabete/facts-figures-faits-chiffres-2011/index-eng.php>. Accessed 16 April 2013
- Public Health Agency of Canada (PHAC). 2008. The Chief Public Health Officer's Report on The State of Public Health in Canada 2008. Available at <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/cphorsphc-respcacsp/2008/fr-rc/index-eng.php>. Accessed 15 April 2013.
- Shandro, J., A. Ostry, and M. Scoble. 2012. Opportunities to meet the health needs of the Stuart Lake/ Na'kal Bun area: a baseline study of community health, community health and social services and reported impacts from local mining developments. Vancouver: Vancouver Foundation.
- Statistics Canada. 2013a. Select health indicators of First Nations people living off reserve, Métis and Inuit. Health at a Glance. Catalogue no. 82-624-x. Available at <http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/82-624-x/2013001/article/11763-eng.htm>. Accessed 09 January 2014.

- Statistics Canada. 2013b. CANSIM Table 105-050. Health indicator profile, annual estimates, by age group and sex, Canada, provinces, territories, health regions (2011 boundaries) and peer groups. Available at <http://www5.statcan.gc.ca/cansim/a05;jsessionid=8CC7FC705A28C07AF5E1748EB44842DF>. Accessed 09 April 2013.
- Statistics Canada. 2013c. Canadian Community Health Survey – Annual Component. Available at <http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p2SV.pl?Function=getSurvey&SDDS=3226>.
- Story, M., M. Evans, R. Fabsitz, T. Clay, B. Holy Rock, and B. Broussard. 1999. "The epidemic of obesity in American Indian communities and the need for childhood obesity-prevention programs." *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 69, 7475-7545. Available at <http://ajcn.nutrition.org/content/69/4/7475.long>. Accessed 20 January 2014.
- United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA). 2005. *Human Health Risk Assessment Protocol for Hazardous Waste Combustion Facilities*. Office of Solid Waste, EPA530-R-5-006.
- Weeks, James L. 2011. Health and Safety Hazards in the Construction Industry. ILO Encyclopaedia of Occupational Health & Safety. Available at <http://www.ilo.org/oshenc/part-xvi/construction/health-prevention-and-management/item/518-health-and-safety-hazards-in-the-construction-industry>. Accessed 26 November 2013.
- Willows, N.D., A.J.G. Hanley, and T. Delormier. 2012. "A socioecological framework to understand weight-related issues in Aboriginal children in Canada." *Applied Physiology, Nutrition, and Metabolism*, 37(1), 1–13. Available at <http://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/pdfplus/10.1139/h11-128>. Accessed 10 January 2014.
- Wolfe, B., W. Evans, and T. Seeman (eds). 2012. *The Biological Consequences of socioeconomic Inequalities*. New York: Russell Sage Foundation.
- WorkSafe Victoria. Undated. Hazards and High-Risk Forestry Activities. Available at <http://www.worksafe.vic.gov.au/safety-and-prevention/your-industry/forestry/how-to-comply/hazards-and-high-risk-forestry-activities>. Accessed 26 November 2013.
- WorkSafeBC. 2013a. OHS Regulation and Related Materials. Available at <http://www2.worksafebc.com/Publications/OHSRegulation/Home.asp>. Accessed 29 November 2013.
- WorkSafeBC. 2013b. 2013 Classification & Rate List. Effective January 1, 2013. Available at [http://www.worksafebc.com/regulation\\_and\\_policy/published\\_policy/assets/pdf/RateList2013.pdf](http://www.worksafebc.com/regulation_and_policy/published_policy/assets/pdf/RateList2013.pdf). Accessed 16 September 2013.



WorkSafeBC. 2013c. WorkSafeBC 2012 Statistics. Available at [http://www.worksafebc.com/publications/reports/statistics\\_reports/assets/pdf/stats2012.pdf](http://www.worksafebc.com/publications/reports/statistics_reports/assets/pdf/stats2012.pdf). Accessed 13 May 2013.

World Health Organization (WHO) 1999. Guidelines for Community Noise, Edited by Birgitta Berglund, World Health Organization, Thomas Lindvall, and Dietrich Schwela, Geneva, April.

Young, T., Kue, J. Reading, B. Elias, and J. O'Neil. 2000. "Type 2 diabetes mellitus in Canada's First Nations: status of an epidemic in progress." *CMAJ* 163, 561–566. Available at <http://www.cmaj.ca/content/163/5/561.full>. Accessed 10 January 2014.

### **Section 10 – Accidents and Malfunctions**

British Columbia Ministry of Energy, Mines and Natural Gas (BC MEMNG). 2013. Mining Emergency Response Plan Guidelines for the Mining Industry. Available at <http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/Mining/HealthandSafety/EmergencyPreparedness/Documents/MERPGuidelines.pdf>. Accessed November 2013.

British Columbia Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources (BC MEMPR). 2008. Health, Safety and Reclamation Code for Mines in British Columbia. Available at <http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/Mining/HealthandSafety/Documents/HSRC2008.pdf>. Accessed November 2013.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks. 1996. Guidelines for Assessing the Design, Size and Operation of Sedimentation Ponds Used in Mining.

Canadian Dam Association (CDA). 2007. Canadian Dam Association Dam Safety Guidelines. Available at <http://www.imis100ca1.ca/cda>. Accessed November 2013.

Canadian Standards Association (CSA). 2014. CAN/CSA Z731-03 (R2014) Emergency Preparedness and Response. Available at <http://shop.csa.ca/en/canada/injury-prevention/canrsa-z731-03-r2014/inv/27019912003>. Accessed November 2013.

CDA. 2013. Draft Technical Bulletin: Mining Dams – Application of 2007 Dam Safety Guidelines to Mining Dams. April 15, 2013.

Environment Canada (EC). 2009. Environmental Code of Practice for Metal Mines.

Fell, R., D.S. Bowles, L.R. Anderson, and G. Bell. 1999. The Status of Methods for Estimation of the Probability of Failure of Dams for Use in Quantitative Risk Assessment. Int. Comm. on Large Dams. 20<sup>th</sup> Congr., Beijing, China.

Government of British Columbia. 1990. Spill Reporting Regulation. BC Reg 263/90, incl'd Reg. 321/2004

- Government of British Columbia. 1996a. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 293.
- Government of British Columbia. 1996b. *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 458.
- Government of Canada. 1985. *Explosives Act*. RSC 1985, c. E-17.
- Government of Canada. 1992. *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act, 1992*. SC 1992, c. 34.
- Government of Canada. 2001. *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Regulations*. SOR/2001-286.
- Government of Canada. 2012. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. SC 2012, c. 19, s. 52.
- International Standards Organization (ISO). 2004. ISO 14001:2004 Environmental Management Systems.
- ISO. 2009. ISO 31000:2009 Risk Management – Principles and Guidelines.
- Knight Piésold, 2013. New Gold Inc., Blackwater Gold Project. Mine Waste and Water Management Design Report, Rev A. 22 November 2013.
- New Gold Inc. 2013. Health, Safety, Environment and Corporate Social Responsibility Policy. Available at [newgold.com/files/documents\\_corporate/HSE%20CSR%20Policy%20-%202013.pdf](http://newgold.com/files/documents_corporate/HSE%20CSR%20Policy%20-%202013.pdf). Accessed 10 October 2013.
- New Gold Inc. 2014. NI 43-101 Feasibility Study Report for the Blackwater Project, January 2014.
- Piteau Associates Engineering Ltd. 1991. Mined Rock and Overburden Piles, Investigation and Design Manual, Interim Guidelines. British Columbia Mine Dump Committee. May 1991.
- Resources Canada. 2011. Quantity Distance Principles User's Manual. Explosives Regulatory Division Natural Resources Canada. Available at <http://www.nrcan.gc.ca/minerals-metals/explosives/4283>. Accessed November 2013.
- United Nations Environment Program (UNEP). 2001. APELL - - Awareness and Preparedness for Emergencies at Local Level, Division of Technology, Industry and Economics, Technical Report N°41.

### **Section 11 – Effects of the Environment on the Project**

- Adams, J. and S. Halchuk. 2003. Fourth generation seismic hazard maps of Canada: Values for over 650 Canadian localities intended for the 2005 National Building Code of Canada, Geological Survey of Canada, Open File 4459.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- AMEC. 2013a. Blackwater Project, Baseline Report – Vegetation. Burnaby, BC.
- AMEC. 2013b. Blackwater Project, Baseline Report – 2013 Surface Hydrology. Burnaby, BC.
- BC Ministry of Forests. 1999. Mapping and Assessment Terrain Stability Guidebook. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, August 1999.
- BC Wildlife Management Branch. 2013. Available at [http://bcwildfire.ca/Weather/Maps/danger\\_rating.htm](http://bcwildfire.ca/Weather/Maps/danger_rating.htm). Accessed on July 2013.
- Canada Avalanche Association. 2001. Land Manager's Guide to Snow Avalanche Hazards in Canada (Draft). Revelstoke, British Columbia.
- CEA Agency. 2103. Environmental Impact Statement Guidelines: Guidelines for the preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement for an environmental assessment conducted pursuant to the Canadian Environmental Assessment Act, 2012. Blackwater Gold Project– British Columbia. New Gold Incorporated. 19 February 2013.
- Emergency Management BC. 2013. Prepare for Volcano Hazards in British Columbia. Available at [http://embc.gov.bc.ca/em/hazard\\_preparedness/volcano/volcano-hazards-in-bc.pdf](http://embc.gov.bc.ca/em/hazard_preparedness/volcano/volcano-hazards-in-bc.pdf). Accessed August 2013.
- Government of British Columbia (BC). 1996a. Forest Fire Prevention and Suppression Regulation. BC Reg. 169/95.
- Government of British Columbia (BC). 1996b. Forest Practices Code of British Columbia Act. RSBC 1996, c. 159.
- Government of Canada. 2013. Get Prepared: Avalanches. Available at <http://www.getprepared.gc.ca/cnt/hzd/vlchs-eng.aspx#a1>. Accessed August 2013.
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2013a. Preliminary Engineering Hydrometeorology. Vancouver BC. Canada.
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2013b. Reconnaissance Terrain and Terrain Stability Mapping. Vancouver BC. Canada.
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2013c. Transmission Line Feasibility Study. New Gold Inc. Blackwater Project. Vancouver BC. Canada.
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2013d. Construction Sediment and Erosion Control Plan. New Gold Inc. Blackwater Project. Vancouver BC. Canada.
- Knight Piésold Ltd. 2014. Mine Waste and Water Management Design Report. Blackwater Project. Vancouver BC. Canada.

- Natural Resources Canada (NRCan). 2014a. Available at [http://www.earthquakescanada.nrcan.gc.ca/index-eng.php?tpl\\_region=west](http://www.earthquakescanada.nrcan.gc.ca/index-eng.php?tpl_region=west). Accessed February 2014.
- Natural Resources Canada. 2013. Nazko Cone and Nearby 2007 Activity. Available at [http://www.earthquakescanada.nrcan.gc.ca/nazko\\_cone-eng.php](http://www.earthquakescanada.nrcan.gc.ca/nazko_cone-eng.php). Accessed August 2013.
- Natural Resources Canada. 2014b. Seismic Hazard in Canada; Seismic Hazard Map. Available at <http://www.earthquakescanada.nrcan.gc.ca/hazard-alea/simphaz-eng.php>. Accessed February 2014.
- New Gold Inc. 2012. Blackwater Project, British Columbia. Preliminary Economic Assessment Report. Vancouver, BC.
- NRCan. 2010. National Building Code of Canada Seismic Hazard Calculator. Available at [http://www.earthquakescanada.nrcan.gc.ca/hazardalea/interpolat/index\\_2010-eng.php](http://www.earthquakescanada.nrcan.gc.ca/hazardalea/interpolat/index_2010-eng.php). Accessed June 2013.
- Office of Housing and Construction Standards. 2012. BC Building Code and Earthquake Safety. Available at [www.housing.gov.bc.ca/info/fs/FS\\_BCBC\\_Seismic.pdf](http://www.housing.gov.bc.ca/info/fs/FS_BCBC_Seismic.pdf). Accessed June 2013.
- Onur, T., M.R. Seemann. 2004. Probabilities of Significant Earthquake Shaking in Communities across British Columbia: Implications for Emergency Management. Available at [ftp://seismescanada.nrcan.gc.ca/pub/hazardpubs/13WCEEp1065Onur\\_Seemann.pdf](ftp://seismescanada.nrcan.gc.ca/pub/hazardpubs/13WCEEp1065Onur_Seemann.pdf). Accessed 2013.
- Pacific Northwest Seismic Network. 2013. Cascadia Subduction Zone. Available at <http://www.pnsn.org/outreach/earthquakesources/csz>. Accessed August 2013.
- Prince George Fire Centre. 2013a. Record of the total and average amount of hectares burned by forest fires in the Vanderhoof Forest District between 1980 and 2012. Prince George, BC.
- Prince George Fire Centre. 2013b. Vanderhoof Forest District Fire Probability Map: G4-VanJam Fire Zone. Prince George, BC.
- Smithsonian Institution. National Museum of Natural History. Global Volcanism Program. Available at <http://www.volcano.si.edu/volcano.cfm?vnum=1200-14->. Accessed August 2013.
- U.S.G.S. 1995. Potential Volcanic Hazards from Future Activity of Mount Baker, Washington. United States Geological Survey, Open-File Report 95-498.

Volcano Discovery. 2013a. Nazko Volcano. Available at  
<http://www.volcanodiscovery.com/nazko.html>. Accessed August 2013.

Volcano Discovery. 2013b. Satah Volcano. Available at  
<http://www.volcanodiscovery.com/satah.html>. Accessed August 2013.

**Section 12 – Summary of Proposed Environmental and Operational Management Plans**

AMEC. 2013. Baseline Hydroacoustic Program.

AMEC. 2014. Archaeological Impact Assessment Report. In prep.

AMEC. 2014. Draft Application Information Requirements For New Gold Inc. (Version G).

Archaeology Branch. 1998. *Archaeological Impact Assessment Guidelines [revised edition]*.  
Victoria, BC, Ministry of Small Business, Tourism and Culture, Archaeology Branch.

Archaeology Branch. 1999. Found Human Remains. Policy Statement.

Archaeology Branch. 2000. British Columbia Archaeological Inventory Guidelines. Victoria, BC,  
Ministry of Small Business, Tourism and Culture, Cultural Task Force Resources  
Inventory Committee, Version 1.0.

Archaeology Branch. 2001. Culturally Modified Trees of British Columbia: A Handbook for the  
Identification and Recording of Culturally Modified Trees. Victoria, BC, Ministry of Small  
Business, Tourism, and Culture.

BC Conservation Data Centre (BC CDC). 2012. BC Species and Ecosystem Explorer. Available  
at <http://a100.gov.bc.ca/pub/eswp/>. Accessed 2012.

BC Hydro. 2009. Pest Management Plan for Management of Vegetation at BC Hydro Facilities  
PMP #105-0975-07/12. BC Hydro.

BC Hydro. 2013. Approved Work Practices for Managing Riparian Vegetation.

BC MFLNRO. 2012b. Vanderhoof Forest District Land and Resource Management Plan.  
Available at  
[http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/sites/default/files/resources/public/PDF/LRMP/Vanderhoof\\_LRMP.pdf](http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/sites/default/files/resources/public/PDF/LRMP/Vanderhoof_LRMP.pdf). Accessed 2013. BC MFLNRO. 2012c. *Invasive Alien Plant Program*. Available at  
<http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/ha/Plants/>. Accessed 2013.

BC MFLNRO. 2012d. Invasive Alien Plant Program (IAPP) Application. Available at  
<http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/ha/Plants/application.htm>. Accessed 2010.

BC MFLNRO. 2013. Draft Provincial Framework for Moose Management in British Columbia.  
Fish and Wildlife Habitat Branch, Victoria, BC.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- BC Ministry of Agriculture. 2002. Guide to Weeds in British Columbia. BC Government Publication Services. Open Learning Agency. Available at <http://www.agf.gov.bc.ca/weedsbc/resources.html>. Accessed 2013.
- BC Ministry of Energy, Mines and Natural Gas. 2013. Mine Emergency Response Plan, Guidelines for the Mining Industry. Available at <http://www.empr.gov.bc.ca/Mining/HealthandSafety/EmergencyPreparedness/Documents/MERPGuidelines.pdf>. Accessed 2014.
- BC Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources. 2008. Health and Safety Reclamation Code for Mines in British Columbia.
- BC Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources. 2009. Handbook for Mineral and Coal Exploration in British Columbia 2008-2009.
- BC Ministry of Forests (BC MOF). 1995. Riparian Management Area Guidebook.
- BC Ministry of Forests (MOF). Forest Practices Branch. 1997. Visual Landscape Inventory. Procedures and Standards Manual. May 1997. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/risc/pubs/culture/visual/vli.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2012a. Establishment of Scenic Areas and Visual Quality Objectives (VQOs) for the Vanderhoof Forest District (VFD). Objectives for Visual Quality ver: 4.0. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/ftp/DVA/external/publish/Scenic%20Areas-VQOs\\_DVA/sept1808order.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/ftp/DVA/external/publish/Scenic%20Areas-VQOs_DVA/sept1808order.pdf). Accessed 2013.
- BC Ministry of the Environment (BC MOE). 2003. Field Sampling Manual For Continuous Monitoring and the Collection of Air, Air-Emission, Water, Wastewater, Soil, Sediment, and Biological Samples 2003 Edition. Prepared and published by Water, Air and Climate Change Branch Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection (currently BC MOE), Province of British Columbia, January.
- BC Ministry of Transportation and Infrastructure (BC MOTI). 2010. Best Practices for Managing Invasive Plants on Roadsides. A Pocket Guide for British Columbia's Maintenance Contractors. Invasive Plant Council of BC. Available at [http://www.th.gov.bc.ca/invasiveplant/documents/Invasive\\_Plants\\_Pocket\\_Guide.pdf](http://www.th.gov.bc.ca/invasiveplant/documents/Invasive_Plants_Pocket_Guide.pdf). Accessed 2013.
- BC MOE 2009a. Water Quality Guidelines for Nitrogen (ammonia, nitrite, nitrate).
- BC MOE 2012a. Draft Ambient Water Quality Guidelines for Selenium and Sulphate.
- BC MOE 2013a. Ambient Water Quality Guidelines for Sulphate.



## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- BC MOE. 2004. Region 7 Omineca Reduced Risk Timing Windows for Fish and Wildlife. Standards and Best Practices for Instream Works. Ministry of Water, Lands and Air Protection, Omineca Region Ecosystem. Environmental Stewardship Division.
- BC MOE. 2005. Hazardous Waste Legislation Guide. Revised by Oliver N.C. St. Quintin, Egistra Innovation Ltd. previously issued as: Special waste legislation guide/BC Environment, Environmental Protection Division, 1993.
- BC MOE. 2006 b. A Compendium of Working Water Quality Guidelines for British Columbia.
- BC MOE. 2006a. British Columbia Approved Water Quality Guidelines
- BC MOE. 2006c. Develop with Care: Environmental Guidelines for Urban and Rural Land Development in British Columbia.
- BC MOE. 2008. Ambient Aquatic Life Guidelines for Iron.
- BC MOE. 2009b. Conservation Framework: Conservation Priorities for Species and Ecosystems Primer. Ecosystems Branch, Environmental Stewardship Division, Ministry of Environment. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/conservationframework/documents/CF\\_Primer.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/conservationframework/documents/CF_Primer.pdf). Accessed January 2014.
- BC MOE. 2011. Water and Air Baseline Monitoring Guidance Document for Mine Proponents and Operators, Version 1. BC MOE, Victoria, BC. August 2011.
- BC MOE. 2012b. Water and Air Baseline Monitoring Guidance Document for Mine Proponents and Operators. Signed October 9, 2012. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/epd/industrial/mining/pdf/water\\_air\\_baseline\\_monitoring.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/epd/industrial/mining/pdf/water_air_baseline_monitoring.pdf). Accessed 2013.
- BC MOE. 2013b. Best Management Practices to Protect Water Quality.
- BC MOE. 2014. Conservation Framework. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/conservationframework/>. Accessed 2014.
- BC MOF. 1998. Recreation Features Inventory Procedures and Standards Manual. October 1998. Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/risc/pubs/culture/rfi/assets/rfi.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC MOF. 2001. Visual Impact Assessment Guidebook. Second edition. Forest Practices Branch. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/tasb/legsregs/fpc/fpcguide/VISUAL/VIA-01.pdf>. Accessed July 2012.
- BC MOF. 2012. Prince George Timber Supply Area (TSA) Mid-term Report. Available at [http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain\\_pine\\_beetle/mid-term-timber-supply-project/Prince%20George%20TSA.pdf](http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfp/mountain_pine_beetle/mid-term-timber-supply-project/Prince%20George%20TSA.pdf). Accessed 2013.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



BC MOF. 2012a. Fish-Stream Crossing Guidebook.

British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2006. Mine Proponent's Guide. How to Prepare Terms of Reference and an Application. BC, Canada. BC EAO.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks (BC MOELP). 1996. Guidelines for Assessing the Design, Size and Operation of Sedimentation Ponds Used in Mining.

British Columbia Ministry of Forest, Land and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2013. Draft Provincial Framework for Moose Management in British Columbia. Fish, Wildlife and Habitat Management Branch, Victoria, BC.

Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment (CCME). 1999. Canadian National Air Quality Objectives.

Canadian Dam Association. 2007. Dam Safety Guidelines.

Canadian Dam Association. 2013. Draft Bulletin on Dam Safety. Available at [www.cda.ca](http://www.cda.ca). Accessed January 2014.

CCME. 2007, 2012. Environmental Quality Guidelines.

City of Prince George. 2008. Highways Bylaw No. 8065, 2008. Available at [http://princegeorge.ca/cityhall/legislativeservices/citybylaws/Bylaw%20Documents/8065\\_merged.pdf](http://princegeorge.ca/cityhall/legislativeservices/citybylaws/Bylaw%20Documents/8065_merged.pdf). Accessed March 2014.

City of Prince George. 2009. Transport of Dangerous Goods Bylaw No. 8192, 2009. Available at [http://princegeorge.ca/cityhall/mayorcouncil/councilagendasminutes/agendas/2014/2014\\_01\\_20/documents/BL8563\\_Merged.pdf](http://princegeorge.ca/cityhall/mayorcouncil/councilagendasminutes/agendas/2014/2014_01_20/documents/BL8563_Merged.pdf). Accessed March 2014.

Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada. 2001. COSEWIC assessment and status report on the Yellow Rail *Coturnicops noveboracensis* in Canada. Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada. Ottawa, Ontario.

COSEWIC. 2010. COSEWIC Assessment and Status Report on the Whitebark Pine *Pinus albicalis* in Canada. Ottawa, Ontario. Cox, R. and J. Cullington. 2009. Wetland Ways: Interim Guidelines for Wetland Protection and Conservation in British Columbia. Wetland Stewardship Partnership. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/wetlandways2009/Wetland%20Ways%20Ch%206%20Mining.pdf>. Accessed 2013.

Cranston, R., D. Ralph and B. Wikeem. 2002. *Field Guide to Noxious and Other Selected Weeds in British Columbia*. Fourth Edition, 2002. Prepared by Roy Cranston and David Ralph BC Ministry of Agriculture and Dr. Brian Wikeem previously with Silviculture Branch BC Ministry of Forests. Available at <http://www.agf.gov.bc.ca/cropprot/weedguid/weedguid.htm>. Accessed 2013.

- DFO. 2013. Measures to avoid causing harm to fish and fish habitat. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/pnw-ppe/measures-mesures/index-eng.html> Accessed 19 December 2013.
- EC. 2009. Environmental Code of Practice for Metal Mines. Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/lcpe-cepa/default.asp?lang=En&n=CBE3CD59-1>. Accessed 2012.
- EC. 2012. National Air Pollution Surveillance Network (NAPS). Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/rnspa-naps/>. Accessed 2013.
- EC. 2013. Metal Mine Effluent Regulations.
- EC. 2014. Recovery Strategy for the Woodland Caribou, Southern Mountain population (*Rangifer tarandus caribou*) in Canada [Proposed]. Species at Risk Act Recovery Strategy Series. Environment Canada, Ottawa. viii + 68 pp.
- Environment Canada (EC). 2005. Best Practices for the Reduction of Air Emissions From Construction and Demolition Activities. Environment Canada, Transboundary Issues Branch. March 2005. ISBN 0-7726-2741-X.
- Environmental Law Institute. 2008. *Planner's Guide to Wetland Buffers for Local Governments*. ELI Project No. 0627-01. Environmental Law Institute: Washington D.C.
- Government of BC. 1985. *Transport of Dangerous Goods Regulation*. BC Reg. 203/85.
- Government of BC. 1990. *Spill Reporting Regulation*. BC Reg. 263/90.
- Government of BC. 1996a. *Fire Services Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 144.
- Government of BC. 1996b. *Health Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 179.
- Government of BC. 1996c. *Mines Act*. RSC 1996, c. 293.
- Government of BC. 1996d. *Water Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 483.
- Government of BC. 1996e. *Water Protection Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 484.
- Government of BC. 1996f. *Wildlife Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 488.
- Government of BC. 1996g. *Workers Compensation Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 492.
- Government of BC. 1996h. *Contaminated Sites Regulation*. BC Reg. 375/96.
- Government of BC. 1996i. *Weed Control Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 487.
- Government of BC. 1996j. *Heritage Conservation Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 187.

- 
- Government of BC. 1996k. *Forest Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 157.
- Government of BC. 1996l. *Forest Practices Code of British Columbia Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 159.
- Government of BC. 1996m. *Transport of Dangerous Goods Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 458.
- Government of BC. 1996n. *Motor Vehicle Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 318.
- Government of BC. 1996o. *Employment Standards Act*. RSBC 1996, c. 113.
- Government of BC. 1997. *Occupational Health and Safety Regulation*. BC Reg 296/97.
- Government of BC. 1997a. *Fish Protection Act*.
- Government of BC. 1998. *Spill Cost Recovery Regulation*. BC Reg. 250/98.
- Government of BC. 2001. *Drinking Water Protection Act*. SBC 2001, c. 9.
- Government of BC. 2002a. *Environmental Assessment Act*. SBC 2002, c. 43.
- Government of BC. 2002b. *Forests and Range Practices Act*. RSBC 2002, c. 69.
- Government of BC. 2003a. *Community Charter*. SBC 2003, c. 26.
- Government of BC. 2003b. *Environmental Management Act*. SBC 2003, c. 53.
- Government of BC. 2003c. *Integrated Pest Management Act*. RSBC 2003, c. 58.
- Government of BC. 2004a. *Invasive Plants Regulation*. BC Regulation 18/2004.
- Government of BC. 2004a. *Riparian Areas Regulation*. BC Reg. 376/2004.
- Government of BC. 2004b. *Wildfire Act*. SBC 2004, c. 31.
- Government of BC. 2005. *Wildfire Regulation*. BC Regulation 38/2005 [includes amendments up to B.C. Reg. 157/2012. June 25, 2012]
- Government of BC. 2008. *Health, Safety and Reclamation Code for Mines in British Columbia*.
- Government of BC. 2010. *Municipal Sewage Regulation*. BC Regulation 129/99 [including amendments up to B.C. Reg 4/2010, January 14, 2010] Queen's Printer.
- Government of BC. 2011a. *Weed Control Regulation*, BC Reg. 66/85.
- Government of BC. 2011b. *British Columbia Dam Safety Regulation*. BC Reg. 163/2011.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Government of BC. 2012. *Municipal Wastewater Regulation*. BC Regulation 87/2012, Deposited 20 April 2012.
- Government of Canada. 1985a. *Canada Water Act*. RSC 1985. c. C-11.
- Government of Canada. 1985b. *Canada Wildlife Act*. RSC 1985, c. W-9.
- Government of Canada. 1985c. *Explosives Act*. RSC 1985, c. E-17.
- Government of Canada. 1985d. *Fisheries Act*. RSC 1985. c. F-14.
- Government of Canada. 1985e. *Hazardous Products Act*. RSC 1985, c. H-3.
- Government of Canada. 1985f. *Seeds Act*. RSC 1985, c. S-8.
- Government of Canada. 1986. *Canada Occupational Health and Safety Regulations*. SOR/86-304.
- Government of Canada. 1991. *The Federal Policy on Wetland Conservation*. Environment Canada, Canada Wildlife Service: Ottawa, ON.
- Government of Canada. 1992. *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act*. SC 1992, c.34.
- Government of Canada. 1994. *Migratory Birds Convention Act*. SC 1994, c. 22.
- Government of Canada. 1996. *Canada Transportation Act*. SC 1996, c. 10.
- Government of Canada. 1999. *Canadian Environmental Protection Act*. SC 1999, c. 33.
- Government of Canada. 2001. *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Regulations*. SOR/2001-286.
- Government of Canada. 2002a. *Metal Mining Effluent Regulations under the Fisheries Act*. SOR/2002-222.
- Government of Canada. 2002b. *Species at Risk Act*. SC 2002, c. 29. Available at <http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/species-especies/faq/faq-eng.htm>. Accessed May 2013.
- Government of Canada. 2003. *Environmental Emergency Regulations*. SOR/2003-307.
- Government of Canada. 2004. *Marine Transportation Security Act, Marine Transportation Security Regulations*. SOR/2004-144.
- Government of Canada. 2005. *Export and Import of Hazardous Waste and Hazardous Recyclable Material Regulations*. SOR/2005-149.
- Government of Canada. 2013. *Fisheries Protection Policy Statement*.

- Hruby, T. 2013. Update on Wetland Buffers: The State of the Science – Draft, August 2013. Washington State Department of Ecology Publication #13-06-11. Olympia, WA.
- ILMB. 2008. Review and Amendment Project. Available at <http://archive.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/plan/project.html>. Accessed 16 May 2013.
- Integrated Land Management Bureau (ILMB). 1997. Vanderhoof Land and Resource Management Plan. Retrieved from Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations: Available at <http://www.ilmb.gov.bc.ca/slrp/lrmp/princegeorge/vanderhf/index.html>. Accessed 2012.
- International Commission on Large Dams (ICOLD). 1995. Dam Failures, Statistical Analysis. ICOLD Bulletin 99.
- International Council on Metals and the Environment (ICME). 2014. The International Cyanide Management Code for the Manufacture, Transport, and Use of Cyanide in the Production of Gold. Available at <http://www.cyanidecode.org/>. Accessed March 2014.
- International Organization for Standardization (ISO). 1995. Guide to the Expression of Uncertainty in Measurements. Geneva. ISBN 92-67-10188-9, First Edition 1993, corrected and reprinted 1995.
- Lorax Environmental. 2013. Metal Sorption Potential of Natural Substrates Underlying the Blackwater Tailings Storage Facility: Implications for Attenuation Along Seepage Flowpaths.
- Milhous, R.T. 1998. Modelling instream flow needs: the link between sediment and aquatic habitat. *Regulated Rivers: Research and Management* 14: 79-94.
- New Gold Inc. 2014. Blackwater Project NI 43-101 Feasibility Study Report.
- New Gold Inc., 2013. Blackwater Project, Domestic Wastewater Feasibility and Pre-Design Draft.
- Partners in Flight (PIF). 2014. Best Management Practices. Available at <http://www.partnersinflight.org/pubs/BMPs.htm>. Accessed January 2014.
- Price, W.A. 1997. Draft guidelines and recommended methods for the Prediction of Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage at Mine sites in British Columbia.
- Recreation Sites and Trails BC. 2013. Available at <http://www.sitesandtrailsbc.ca>. Accessed July 2013.
- Smith DW, ed. 1996. Cold Regions Utilities Monograph, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. New York, NY. American Society of Civil Engineers



## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Transport Canada. 2004. Canada-British Columbia Agreement Respecting Administration of the Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act, 1992. Signed 14 September 2004.
- Transport Canada. 2012. Emergency Response Guidebook. Ottawa, Ontario.
- Tribal Energy and Environmental Information: Environmental Resources for Tribal Energy Development, Visual Resource Mitigation Measures. Office of Indian Energy and Economic Development. Available at <http://teeic.anl.gov/er/geothermal/mitigation/visual/index.cfm>. Accessed 2013.
- Tyson, J.D., W.M. Tonn, S. Boss, and B.W. Hanna. 2011. General fish-out protocol for lakes and impoundments in the Northwest Territories and Nunavut. Canadian Technical Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences No. 2935: v + 34 p.
- United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA). 1984. Process Design Manual for Land Treatment of Municipal Wastewater Supplement on Rapid Infiltration and Overland Flow. Office of Water Program Operations Office of Research and Development.
- US EPA. 2009. Title 40: Protection of Environment Part 58 – Ambient Air Quality Surveillance, Subpart G – Federal Monitoring Appendix E – Probe and Monitoring Path Siting Criteria for Ambient Air Quality Monitoring, Research Triangle Park, NC.
- US EPA. 2012. The U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Title 40 Protection of Environment CFR Part 53 and 58 Ambient Air Monitoring Reference and Equivalent Methods. Available at <http://ecfr.gpoaccess.gov>. Accessed 2013.
- US EPA. 2013. Non-road Compression Ignition Engines – Exhaust Emission Standards. Available at <http://www.epa.gov/otaq/standards/nonroad/nonroadci.htm>. Accessed 2013.
- Wald, A.R. 2009. Report of Investigations in Instream Flow: High flows for fish and wildlife in Washington. Habitat Program, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. Washington State Department of Printing. Olympia, WA. 29 pp.
- Welsch, D., D. Smart, J. Boyer, P. Minken, H. Smith, and T. McCandless. 1995. *Forested Wetlands – Functions, Benefits, and the Use of Best Management Practices*. NA-PR-01-95. US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northern Area State and Private Forestry. Radnor, PA.
- Westernwater Associates Ltd. 2013. Draft Report – Feasibility - Environmental Impact Study in Support of Wastewater Disposal via Rapid Infiltration Basin for the proposed Backwater Mining Construction Camp Expansion.

---

### **Section 13 – Compliance Reporting**

British Columbia Government. 1996. *Environmental Management Act Contaminated Sites Regulation*. B.C. Reg. 375/96. Updated to 2014.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment. 2009. British Columbia Environmental Laboratory Manual.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment. 2012. Monitoring Guidance Document for Mine Proponents and Operators

British Columbia Oil and Gas Commission (BC OGC) 2009. Noise Directive, Section 4: Noise Complaint Investigations.

CABIN. 2012. CABIN Database. Available at [http://cabin.cciw.ca/Application/birc\\_login.asp?Lang=en-ca](http://cabin.cciw.ca/Application/birc_login.asp?Lang=en-ca). Accessed 2012.

Canadian Aquatic Biomonitoring Network (CABIN). 2011. CABIN Resources. Available at <http://www.ec.gc.ca/rcba-cabin/default.asp?lang=En&n=74876ADD-1>. Accessed 2012.

Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment (CCME). 2007. Canadian soil quality guidelines for the protection of environmental and human health: summary tables. Updated 2007. Available at [http://www.ccme.ca/assets/pdf/rev\\_soil\\_summary\\_tbl\\_7.0\\_e.pdf](http://www.ccme.ca/assets/pdf/rev_soil_summary_tbl_7.0_e.pdf).

Clarke, K.R., and R.M. Warwick. 2001. Change in marine communities: an approach to statistical analysis and interpretation. Second edition. PRIMER-E: Plymouth, UK.

Connors, B.M., D.R. Marmorek, E. Olson, A.W. Hall, P. de la Cueva Bueno, A. Bensen, K. Bryan, C. Perrin, E. Parkinson, D. Abraham, C. Alexander, C. Murray, R. Smith, L. Grieg, and G. Farrell. 2014. Independent Review of Run-of-River Hydroelectric Projects and their Impacts on Salmonid Species in British Columbia. 157 pp + xiv. Environment Canada (EC). 2011. Metal Mining Environmental Effects Monitoring (EEM) Technical Guidance Document. National Environmental Effects Monitoring Office. Ottawa, ON.

Hanson, A., Goudie, I., Lang, A., Gjerdrum, C., Cotter, R., and G. Donaldson. 2009. A Framework for the Scientific Assessment of Potential Project Impacts on Birds. Canadian Wildlife Service Technical Report Series 508. Atlantic Region. 61 pp.

Lewis, A., T. Hatfield, B. Chilibeck and C. Roberts. 2004. Assessment methods for aquatic habitat and instream flow characteristics in support of applications to dam, divert, or extract water from streams in British Columbia. Report prepared for the BC Ministry of Water, Land and Air Protection and the Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. Available online: [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/assessment\\_methods\\_instreamflow\\_in\\_bc.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/assessment_methods_instreamflow_in_bc.pdf). Accessed on 11 June 2012.

New Gold Inc. 2012. Sustainability Report. Available online: <http://www.newgold.com/corporate-responsibility/sustainability-report>

Resource Inventory Committee (RIC). 1998. Standard for terrestrial ecosystem mapping in British Columbia. Government of British Columbia, Victoria, BC.

### **Section 14 – Aboriginal Groups Background Information**

Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada. 2012, June. First Nation Profiles. Retrieved December 2012, from Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada: <http://www.aadnc-aandc.gc.ca>.

Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada. 2014. First Nations Profiles. Available at <http://pse5-esd5.ainc-inac.gc.ca/fnp/Main/Search/SearchFN.aspx?lang=eng>. Accessed January 2015.

Alexander, D. 1997. A Cultural Heritage Overview of the Cariboo Forest Region. Vancouver: Ministry of Forests.

Andrew Leach & Associates. 2008, June 18. Carrier Chilcotin Tribal Council: Economic Development Strategy. Retrieved February 2013, from Cariboo-Chilcotin Beetle Action Coalition: [www.c-cbac.com](http://www.c-cbac.com).

Brown, D. 2002. Carrier Sekani Self-Government in Context: Land and Resources. 12 . Kamloops, British Columbia, Canada: Western division, Canadian Association of Geographers.

Brown, D. 2002. Carrier Sekani Self-Government in Context: Land and Resources. Western Geography , 21-67.

Burns Lake Native Development Corporation. Not Date. Retrieved February 2013, from <http://www.blndc.ca>.

Business in Vancouver. Not dated. Province signs deal. Retrieved from <http://www.biv.com/article/20120817/BIV0111/120819944/-1/BIV/province-signs-deal-with-nazko-first-nation>.

Carrier Sekani Tribal Council . 2011. Carrier Sekani Tribal Council . Retrieved May 2013, from <http://www.carriersekani.ca/>.

Carrier Sekani Tribal Council. (2006, May). Aboriginal Interests & Use Study on the Enbridge Gateway Pipeline: An Assessment of the Impacts of the Proposed Enbridge Gateway Pipeline on the Carrier Sekani First Nations. Retrieved September 2014, from Carrier Sekani Tribal Council: <http://www.cstc.bc.ca/AIUS%20COMPLETE%20FINAL%20inc.%20maps.pdf>

- Clifford, J. 2003. Four Northwest Coast Museums: Travel Reflections. In J. Clifford, Four Northwest Coast Museums (pp. 212-254).
- Dewhirst, J. 2013\*. An Ethnohistory of Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Traditional Territory. Report prepared for Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation. On file with Archaeo Research Limited, Victoria, BC. September 17, 2013.
- DM Cultural Services Ltd. 2013. Ulkatcho First Nation Traditional Land Use and Ecological Knowledge of the Proposed New Gold Inc, Blackwater Project. Final Report (Public). Prepared for New Gold Inc. October, 2013.
- First Peoples' Heritage, Language & Culture Council. 2012. First Peoples' Language Map of BC. Retrieved December 2012, from Language Needs Assessment: Skin Tye First Nation: <http://maps.fphlcc.ca/node/2112>.
- First Peoples Language Map of BC. (n.d.). Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation . Retrieved January 2013, from <http://maps.fphlcc.ca/lhooskuz>.
- First Peoples Language Map of BC. 2010. Nadleh Whut'en. Retrieved February 2013, from First Peoples Language Map of BC: [http://maps.fphlcc.ca/nadleh\\_whuten](http://maps.fphlcc.ca/nadleh_whuten).
- First People's Language Map of British Columbia. Not Dated. First People's Language Map of British Columbia. Retrieved February 2013, from Stellat'en First Nation: <http://maps.fphlcc.ca/>.
- First Peoples' Language Map of British Columbia. Not Dated. Ulkatchot'en. Retrieved February 2013, from First Peoples' Language Map of British Columbia: <http://maps.fphlcc.ca/ulkatchoten>.
- First Voices. 2011. About the Wet'suwet'en People. Retrieved December 2012, from First Voices: <http://www.firstvoices.com/en/Wetsuweten>.
- FirstVoices. 2011. Nadleh Whut'en Community Portal. Retrieved January 2013, from FirstVoices: <http://www.firstvoices.com/en/Nadleh-Whuten>.
- Forest Practices Board. (2012, April). *Forest Practices Board* . Retrieved September 2014, from Government of BC: [http://www.fpb.gov.bc.ca/IRC180\\_Upgrading\\_of\\_the\\_Trout\\_Mainline\\_Road.pdf](http://www.fpb.gov.bc.ca/IRC180_Upgrading_of_the_Trout_Mainline_Road.pdf)
- Furniss, E. 2004. The Carrier and the Politics of History. In E. R. Wilson, Native Peoples: The Candian Experience (pp. 198-222). Toronto : Oxford UP.
- Government of BC Website. 2014. The New Relationship with First Nations and Aboriginal People, Agreements and Legislation, Forest Consultation and Revenue Sharing Agreements. Retrieved March 2014, from

[http://www.newrelationship.gov.bc.ca/shared/downloads/lhooskuz\\_executed\\_march31.pdf](http://www.newrelationship.gov.bc.ca/shared/downloads/lhooskuz_executed_march31.pdf).

Hall, L. 1992. *The Carrier, My People*. Cloverdale, BC: Friesen Printers.

HealthLinkBC. Not Dated. Ulkatcho Indian Band. Retrieved October 21, 2013, from HealthLinkBC: <http://find.healthlinkbc.ca/search.aspx?d=RG000996>.

Hudson, D. 1983. *Traplines and Timber: Social and Economic Change Among the Carrier Indians of Northern British Columbia*. Edmonton, Alberta: Unpublished PhD thesis submitted to Department of Anthropology, University of Alberta.

In Your Grasp. 2004. Skin Tye Band. Retrieved December 2012, from In Your Grasp: [http://inyourgrasp.bc.ca/search\\_page.asp?pageid=&CO=Waglisla&RG=North&offset=820&PID=3833](http://inyourgrasp.bc.ca/search_page.asp?pageid=&CO=Waglisla&RG=North&offset=820&PID=3833).

Indigenous Work Force website. 2013. Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Project 2013. Retrieved February 2013, from Indigenous Work Force: <http://www.indigenousworkforce.org/sample-page/projects-in-2013/lhooskuz-dene-nation-project-2013/>.

Interview with Anahim Lake RCMP Detachment. 2014, January. Anahim Lake, BC, Canada.

Interview with Burns Lake RCMP Detachment. 2014, January. Burns Lake, BC, Canada

Interview with Fort Fraser/Fraser Lake RCMP Detachment. 2014, January. Fort Fraser, BC, Canada.

Interview with Quesnel RCMP Detachment. 2014, January. Quesnel, BC, Canada.

Interview with Vanderhoof RCMP. 2013, January. Interview with Vanderhoof RCMP. Vanderhoof, BC, Canada.

Interviews with Dakelh Elders. 2013, May. One-on-one interviews. Stoney Creek, BC, Canada.

Interviews with Lhoosk'uz Dene Elders. 2013, July. Interview with LDN Elders. Prince George, BC, Canada.

Interviews with Registered Holde of Trapline TR0712T039. 2012-2013. BC, Canada.

Interviews with Saik'uz Chief and Council Representatives. 2013, January 23. Stoney Creek, BC, Canada.

Interviews with Skin Tye Representatives. 2013, January 22. Interviews with Skin Tye Councillors and Elder. Uncha Reserve, BC, Canada.

Keyoh Holder Interview. 2013, May. Vanderhoof, BC, Canada: One-on-One Interview.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



LDN Representative. 2011, October 31. Ganhada Management: E-mail. Ganhada Management: E-mail. BC, Canada.

Lee-Johnson, E.B. 2008. The Governance of Forestland and Resources in British Columbia: Case Study of Stellat'en First Nation. Thesis submitted for Master of Science (pp. 1-224). Vancouver: University of British Columbia.

Lee-Johnson, E.B. 2008. UBC Library. Retrieved February 2013, from The governance of forestland and resources in British Columbia : case study of Stellat'en First Nation: <http://hdl.handle.net/2429/5643>.

Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Website. 2013. Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Website. Retrieved January 2013, from Lhoosk'uz: <http://www.lhooskuz.com/lhooskuz.htm>.

Lutz, J. 2008. Makuk: A New History of Aboriginal-White Relations. Vancouver, Canada: UBC Press.

McMillan, A.D. and E. Yellowhorn. 2004. First Peoples in Canada (3rd edition). Vancouver, BC: Douglas and McIntyre.

Métis Nation BC. 2010. Response to the British Columbia Utilities Commission. Commission Information Request on the Evidence of the Métis Nation BC, British Columbia Transmission Corporation Application for a Certificate of Public Convenience and Necessity for the Columbia Valley Transmission Project. June 2010. Available at [http://www.bcuc.com/Documents/Proceedings/2010/DOC\\_25662\\_C9-3-MNBC-response-IR-BCUC.pdf](http://www.bcuc.com/Documents/Proceedings/2010/DOC_25662_C9-3-MNBC-response-IR-BCUC.pdf)

Métis Nation BC. 2012. Métis Provincial Council of British Columbia. Retrieved February 2013, from <http://www.mnbc.ca/>

Ministry of Aboriginal Relations and Reconciliation. 2013. Retrieved February 2013, from <http://www.gov.bc.ca/arr/firstnation/nazko/default.html>.

Morice, A. 1893. Notes on the Western Dene. Transactions of the Canadian Institute , 4-122.

Nadleh Whut'en First Nation Website. Not Dated. Retrieved February 2013, from <http://www.nadleh.ca>.

Nazko Economic Development Corporation. 2013. Retrieved October 22, 2013, from Nazko Economic Development Corporation: [www.nazkoecdev.ca](http://www.nazkoecdev.ca).

Nazko First Nation website. 2011, June. Retrieved February 2013, from <http://nazkoband.ca/>.

Nazko First Nation. 2013, September 9. Letter to BC EAO about the Proposed Blackwater Gold Project. Quesnel, BC, Canada.



## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Nazko Logging. 2013. Equipment. Retrieved October 22, 2013, from Nazko Logging:  
[www.nazkologging.com](http://www.nazkologging.com).
- Northern Gateway. 2010, May. Enbridge Northern Gateway Project. Retrieved December 2012,  
from Aboriginal Traditional Knowledge: [www.northerngateway.ca](http://www.northerngateway.ca).
- Office of the Wet'suwet'en. 2012. Skin Tyee. Retrieved December 2012, from Office of the  
Wet'suwet'en: <http://www.wetsuweten.com/communities/skin-tyee>.
- Personal Communication with LDN Band Manager. 2011, October 31. BC, Canada: Personal  
communication.
- Province of BC. 2012, April. News Release: Upgrading of the Trout Mainline Road. Retrieved  
February 2013, from Government of BC:  
[http://www.fpb.gov.bc.ca/IRC180\\_Upgrading\\_of\\_the\\_Trout\\_Mainline\\_Road.htm?\\_\\_taxonomyid=106](http://www.fpb.gov.bc.ca/IRC180_Upgrading_of_the_Trout_Mainline_Road.htm?__taxonomyid=106).
- Province of BC. 2012, August. News Release: B.C. government and Ulkatcho reach land use  
agreement. Retrieved February 2013, from Government of BC:  
[http://www2.news.gov.bc.ca/news\\_releases\\_2009-2013/2012FOR0129-001115.htm](http://www2.news.gov.bc.ca/news_releases_2009-2013/2012FOR0129-001115.htm).
- PTP ASEP Training Society. 2010. Skin Tyee First Nation. Retrieved December 2012, from PTP  
ASEP Training Society in Northern British Columbia: <http://www.ptpasep.ca/skin-tyee-first-nation.html>.
- PTP ASEP Training Society. 2010. Stellat'en First Nation. Retrieved December 2012, from PTP  
ASEP Training Society in Northern British Columbia: <http://www.ptpasep.ca/stellaten-first-nation.html>.
- PTP ASEP Training Society. 2012. Saik'uz First Nation. Retrieved December 2012, from PTP  
ASEP Training Society in Northern British Columbia: <http://www.ptpasep.ca/saikuz-first-nation.html>.
- Quesnel Cariboo Observer. 1996. Quesnel Cariboo Observer. Quesnel, BC, Canada.
- Quesnel Museum. Not Dated. Footprints in Stone. Retrieved May 2013, from Medicinal Plants:  
<http://www.quesnelmuseum.ca/FootprintsInStone/index02.html>.
- Quesnel Museum. Not Dated. Ulkatcho . Retrieved January 2013, from Footprints in Stone:  
Nek'oh Tse K'ut: <http://www.quesnelmuseum.ca/footprintsinstone/index.html>.
- Saik'uz First Nation Website. 2013. Retrieved February 2013, from Saik'uz First Nation:  
<http://www.saikuz.com>.
- School District 91: Nechako Lakes. Not Dated. Meet the Nadleh Whut'en Band. Fort Fraser, BC,  
Canada.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



Shaw, L. R., & Young, J. P. 2012, March 7. Ethnobotany of Tl'azt'en Nation: Plant Use and Gathering Site Characteristics. *Ethnobiology Letters - Research Communication* , 3 . Prince George, British Columbia, Canada: Society of Ethnobiology.

Stellat'en First Nation Website. 2009. Retrieved February 2013, from Stellat'en First Nation: <http://www.stellaten.ca/Home.aspx>.

Stellat'en Nation; British Columbia Government EBook Collection; British Columbia. Ministry of Aboriginal Relations and Reconciliation. 2011. Stellat'en First Nation Forest & Range Consultation and Revenue Sharing Agreement (FCRSA) (the "Agreement"). Ministry of Aboriginal Relations and Reconciliation.

Trapline TR0512T014. 2013, May. LDN Trapline Holder . Interviews with Trapline Holders . BC, Canada.

Trapline TR0512T027. 2013. LDN Member. BC, Canada.

Tsilhqot'in National Government website. Accessed January 29, 2014 from: <http://www.tsilhqotin.ca/fisheries/fisheriescommercial.htm>

UFN Newsletter - April. 2012, April. Ulkatcho: Community Newsletter. BC.

Ulkatcho First Nation Website. 2012. Retrieved February 2013, from Ulkatcho First Nation: <http://ulkatcho.com/>.

Village of Burns Lake, Economic Development Team. 2012. Burns Lake Recovery Transition Response, Economic Development Team-Terms of Reference. Retrieved December 2012, from Village of Burns Lake, Downloads: [www.burnslake.ca](http://www.burnslake.ca).

Village of Fraser Lake. Not Dated. Nadleh Whut'en First Nation. Retrieved February 2013, from Village of Fraser Lake: <http://www.fraserlake.ca/default.aspx?PageID=1044>.

West Chilcotin Tourism Association. 201). First Nations. Retrieved August 2013, from Visit the West Chilcotin: <http://www.visitthewestchilcotin.com/First-Nations.html>.

Wikipedia. 2013, February. Ulkatcho First Nation. Retrieved February 2013, from [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ulkatcho\\_First\\_Nation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ulkatcho_First_Nation).

Wikipedia. 2013. Potlatch. Retrieved February 2013, from Wikipedia: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Potlatch>.

[www.sophiethomas.org](http://www.sophiethomas.org). Not Dated. Traditional Healer of the Carrier Nation. Retrieved February 2013, from Sophie Thomas: <http://sophiethomas.org>.

Yinka Dene Language Institute. 2006. Babine-Witsuwit'en. Retrieved December 2012, from <http://www.ydli.org/langs/bw.htm>.

Young, J., & Hawley, A. (2004). *Plants & Medicines of Sophie Thomas: Based on the Traditional Knowledge of Sophie Thomas, Saik'uz Elder and Healer*. Prince George: UNBC.

\* The following limitations apply to the use of the Report "An Ethnohistory of Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Traditional Territory":

- Any non-public information identified to the Proponent in writing by LDN as sensitive information has been maintained as confidential. Sensitive information has been omitted or summarized in a way that specific details are not identifiable and its confidentiality is maintained;
- The Report has not been disclosed by the Proponent to any third parties except, Proponent employees, contractors and representatives and other persons working on the Application and its supporting materials ("Representatives"). Representatives reviewing the Report are aware of the confidential nature of the Report and have agreed to maintain its confidentiality; and
- Copies of the Report shared by the Proponent with its Representatives are numbered and adequately registered by the Proponent.

### ***Personal Communications***

LDN Comments. 2014, April 9. Lhoosk'uz Dené Nation Comments on Blackwater Gold Project, New Gold Inc. Application for an Environmental Assessment Certificate/Environmental Impact Statement Part C – Lhoosk'uz Dené Nation Draft March 2014. BC, Canada: Personal communication.

### ***Section 15 – Aboriginal Rights***

Alexander, D. 1997. *A Cultural Heritage Overview of the Cariboo Forest Region*. Vancouver: Ministry of Forests, Cariboo Forest Region, BC.

British Columbia (BC) Treaty Commission. 2013. *BC Treaty Commission Annual Report 2013*. Available at [http://www.bctreaty.net/files/pdf\\_documents/BCTC-Annual-Report-2013.pdf](http://www.bctreaty.net/files/pdf_documents/BCTC-Annual-Report-2013.pdf). Accessed January 2014.

BC Treaty Commission. 2014. Available at <http://www.bctreaty.net/nations/carrier.php>. Accessed January 2014.

Birchwater, S. 1994. *Ulkatcho: stories of the Grease Trail*. Quesnel, BC. Spartan Printing.

Carrier Sekani Tribal Council. 2014. Available at <http://www.carriersekani.ca/member-nations>. Accessed January 2014.

- Dewhirst, J. 2013. An Ethnohistory of Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Traditional Territory. Report prepared for Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation. On file with Archaeo Research Limited, Victoria, BC.
- DM Cultural Services Ltd. 2013. Ulkatcho First Nation Traditional Land Use and Ecological Knowledge of the proposed New Gold Inc, Blackwater Project. Final Report (Public). Prepared for New Gold Inc. October, 2013.
- Enbridge. 2010. Enbridge Northern Gateway Project. Aboriginal Traditional Knowledge Fact Sheet (December). Available at [http://www.northerngateway.ca/assets/pdf/Aboriginal/NGP-FS-05-003\\_Aboriginal%20Traditional%20Knowledge.pdf](http://www.northerngateway.ca/assets/pdf/Aboriginal/NGP-FS-05-003_Aboriginal%20Traditional%20Knowledge.pdf). Accessed December 2012.
- Government of Canada. 2014. Schedule to the *Constitution Act*, 1982. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/Const/page-17.html#h-59>. Accessed February 2014.
- Indigenous Work Force. 2013. Lhoosk'uz Dene Nation Project 2013. Available at <http://www.indigenousworkforce.org/sample-page/projects-in-2013/lhooskuz-dene-nation-project-2013/>. Accessed February 2013.
- Kew, M. 1973. Notes on preliminary ethnographic fieldwork among the Southern Carrier Indians, 1972. Unpublished manuscript. "M. Kew, Department of Anthropology and Sociology, University of British Columbia, March 30, 1973"
- Lane, R.B. 1981. Chilcotin in *Handbook of North American Indians: Volume 6 Subarctic*. W.C. Sturtevant. Ed. Washington: Smithsonian Institution. pp. 402–412.
- Métis Nation BC, 2010. Response to the British Columbia Utilities Commission. Commission Information Request on the Evidence of the Métis Nation BC, British Columbia Transmission Corporation Application for a Certificate of Public Convenience and Necessity for the Columbia Valley Transmission Project. June 2010. Available at [http://www.bcuc.com/Documents/Proceedings/2010/DOC\\_25662\\_C9-3-MNBC-response-IR-BCUC.pdf](http://www.bcuc.com/Documents/Proceedings/2010/DOC_25662_C9-3-MNBC-response-IR-BCUC.pdf)
- Métis Nation BC, 2012. Letter to Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency. Information to Inform the Determination of EA Requirement – MNBC Comments, 23 November 2012.
- Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations, BC. 2014. Wildlife Act Review. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlifeactreview/discussion/disc\\_04.html](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlifeactreview/discussion/disc_04.html). Accessed February 2014.
- Nadleh Whut'en First Nation. 2013. Available at <http://www.nadleh.ca/our-people/crafts>. Accessed November 2013.
- Nazko First Nation. 2013a. Available at <http://nazkoband.ca/>. Accessed February 2014.

## BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Nazko First Nation. 2013b. Letter to BC Environmental Assessment Office about the Proposed Blackwater Gold Project. Quesnel, BC, Canada. Dated 19 September 2013.
- Pacific Trails Pipelines Aboriginal Skills Employment Partnership (PTP ASEP) Training Society. 2010. Nadleh Whut'en First Nation. Available at <http://www.ptpasep.ca/nadleh-whuten.html>. Accessed July 2013.
- School District 91: Nechako Lakes. n.d. Meeting with the Nadleh Whut'en Band. Fort Fraser, BC.
- Stellat'en First Nation. 2009. Available at <http://www.stellaten.ca/Home.aspx> Accessed February 2013.
- Stellat'en First Nation. 2014. Available at <http://stellaten.ca/Community/CulturalSites.aspx>. Accessed February 2014.
- Trapline TR0512T014. 2013. LDN Trapline Holder . Interviews with Trapline Holders . BC, Canada.
- Trapline TR0512T027. 2013. Interview with LDN Trapline Holder. BC, Canada.
- Trapline TR0712T039. 2012-2013. Interviews with Registered Trapline Holder. BC, Canada.
- Tsilhqot'in Framework Agreement. 2011. Amended Agreement Among the Province of British Columbia, the Tsilhqot'in Nation and the Tsilhqot'in National Government. 2011 Amended Agreement.
- Tsilhqot'in Nation v. British Columbia. 2007. BCSC 1700. Date: 20071120, Docket 90-0913, Registry: Victoria.
- Turkel, W.J. 2004. The archive of place: environment and the contested past of a North American plateau. Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Boston.
- Upper Fraser Fisheries Conservation Alliance. 2009. Community Fisheries Profile for the Saik'uz First Nation.
- Furniss, E. 1993. Changing Ways: Southern Carrier History, 1793–1940. Quesnel, BC. Quesnel School District.
- Andrew Leach & Associates. 18 June 2008. Carrier Chilcotin Tribal Council: Economic Development Strategy. Available at Cariboo-Chilcotin Beetle Action Coalition: <http://www.c-cbac.com>. Accessed February 2013.
- Ulkatcho First Nation Newsletter. March 2012. Ulkatcho: Community Newsletter. BC.
- Skin Tyee Representatives. (2013, January 22). Interviews with Skin Tyee Councillors and Elder. Uncha Reserve, BC, Canada.

Saik'uz First Nation Elders. (2013, May). Interview with Saik'uz First Nation Elders. Stoney Creek, BC, Canada.

### **Section 16 – Other Aboriginal Interests**

DM Cultural Services Ltd. 2013. Ulkatcho First Nation Traditional Land Use and Ecological Knowledge of the proposed New Gold Inc, Blackwater Project. Final Report (Public). Prepared for New Gold Inc. October 2013. National Aboriginal Health Organization. (2008, October). Resource Extraction and Aboriginal Communities in Northern Canada. Canada. Retrieved November 2013, from [www.naho.ca](http://www.naho.ca)

North Slave Métis Alliance. 2000. Can't Live Without Work: North Slave Métis Alliance Environmental, Social, Economic and Cultural Concern. A Companion to the Comprehensive Review Study on the Diavik Diamonds Project.

Trapline TR0512T027. 2013. Interview with LDN Trapline Holder. BC, Canada.

### **Section 17 – Aboriginal Groups Consultation**

BC EAO. 2004. Canada-British Columbia Agreement on Environmental Assessment Cooperation. BC, Canada. BC EAO.

BC EAO. 2013. Guide to Involving Proponents when Consulting First Nations in the Environmental Assessment Process. December 2013.

British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office (BC EAO). 2006. Mine Proponent's Guide. How to Prepare Terms of Reference and an Application. BC, Canada. BC EAO.

Government of British Columbia. 2002. *Environmental Assessment Act*. SBC 2002. c. 43.

Government of Canada. 2012. *Environmental Assessment Act, 2012*. SC 2012, c. 19, s. 52.

Mackenzie Valley Review Board. 2005. Guidelines for Incorporating Traditional Knowledge in Environmental Impact Assessment. NWT, Canada.

### **Section 19 – Summary of Residual Effects**

BC CDC (British Columbia Conservation Data Centre). 2012. BC Conservation Data Centre Home. Victoria, BC. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/cdc>. Accessed January 2013.

BC Hydro. 2003. Approved Work Practices for Managing Riparian Vegetation. A Guide to Incorporating Riparian Environmental Concerns into the Management of Vegetation in BC Hydro's Transmission and Distribution Corridors. BC Hydro, DFO and MWLAP.

BC Hydro. 2013. Approved Work Practices for Managing Riparian Vegetation.



- BC MFLNRO (British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations). 2014. *Forest and Range Practices Act* BMPs. Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs). Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>. Accessed February 2014.
- BC Ministry of Forests, Lands, and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 2012. 2012-2014 Hunting and Trapping regulations synopsis. Available at [http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/1214/docs/hunting\\_trapping\\_2012\\_2014.pdf](http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/fw/wildlife/hunting/regulations/1214/docs/hunting_trapping_2012_2014.pdf), Accessed 2012.
- BC MOE. 2012. Procedures for Mitigating Impacts on Environmental Values (Environmental Mitigation Procedures). Final Working Draft, 11 June 2012.
- Cox, R. and J. Cullington. 2009. Wetland Ways: Interim Guidelines for Wetland Protection and Conservation in British Columbia. Wetland Stewardship Partnership. Available at <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/documents/bmp/wetlandways2009/Wetland%20Ways%20Ch%206%20Mining.pdf>. Accessed September 2013.
- Environment Canada. 2013a. Network of Protected Areas. Available at [http://www.ec.gc.ca/ap-pa/default.asp?lang=En&n=989C474A-1#\\_001](http://www.ec.gc.ca/ap-pa/default.asp?lang=En&n=989C474A-1#_001). Accessed March 2013.
- Environment Canada. 2013b. Migratory Bird Sanctuaries. Retrieved from <http://www.ec.gc.ca/ap-pa/default.asp?lang=En&n=EB3D54D1-1>. Accessed April 2013.
- Government of British Columbia. 1996a. *Mines Act*. RSBC 1996. c. 293.
- Government of Canada. 1985. *Indian Act*, R.S.C., 1985, c. I-5. Available at <http://laws-lois.justice.gc.ca/eng/acts/i-5/>
- Government of Canada. 2012. *Canadian Environmental Assessment Act*. S.C. 2012, c. 19, s. 52.
- Grizzly Bear Recovery Team. 2004. Recovery Plan for Grizzly Bears in the North Cascades of British Columbia. June 1, 2004. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC.
- Hanson, A., Goudie, I., Lang, A., Gjerdrum, C., Cotter, R., and G. Donaldson. 2009. A Framework for the Scientific Assessment of Potential Project Impacts on Birds. Canadian Wildlife Service Technical Report Series 508. Atlantic Region. 61 pp.
- Interviews with Lhoosk'uz Dene Elders. 2013, July. Interview with LDN Elders. Prince George, BC, Canada.
- Parks Canada. 2013. National Marine Conservation Area List. Available at [http://www.pc.gc.ca/progs/amnc-nmca/recherche-search\\_e.asp?m=1](http://www.pc.gc.ca/progs/amnc-nmca/recherche-search_e.asp?m=1). Accessed March 2013. f. Accessed April 2013.

## **BLACKWATER GOLD PROJECT**

APPLICATION FOR AN  
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT CERTIFICATE /  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT  
REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY



Parks Canada. n.d. National Historic Sites of Canada System Plan. Available at <http://www.pc.gc.ca/progs/lhn-nhs/index.aspx>. Accessed April 2013.

Parks Canada. n.d. National Parks System Plan, 3rd Edition. Available at <http://www.pc.gc.ca/progs/pn-np/index.aspx>. Accessed April 2013.

Triton Environmental Consultants Ltd. 2014. Stelat'en First Nation Land and Resource Use Study Report (Proponent Version for New Gold Incorporated).

WorkSafeBC. 2013a. OHS Regulation and Related Materials. Available at <http://www2.worksafebc.com/Publications/OHSRegulation/Home.asp>. Accessed 29 November 2013.

### ***Section 20 – Summary of Mitigation Measures***

BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). 1995. Bark Beetle Management Guidebook. BC, Canada. Available at <http://www.for.gov.bc.ca/tasb/legsregs/fpc/fpcguide/beetle/betletoc.htm>

Snetsinger, J. 2005. Guidance on Landscape- and Stand-level Structural Retention in Large-Scale Mountain Pine Beetle Salvage Operations. BC Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations (BC MFLNRO). BC, Canada.